INTRODUCTION TO ARABIC



Hana Kassas et al.
Grossmont College

LibreTexts™

Introduction To Arabic

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 09/01/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

About the authors

Program Page

Licensing

1: An Overview of Arabic

1.1: The Arabic Al phabet الحروف العربية

1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل

1.3: Long Vowels المدود

1.4: Vocabulary- Arabic Speaking Countries

1.5: Grammar

1.6: Culture

2: Welcome أهلاً وسهلاً “Ahlan Wa Sahlan”

1: Letters ب ت ث ي ء

2: Vocabulary

3: Dialogue and Reading

4: Subject Pronouns

5: Culture

3: Knowing Each Others التعارف “ Al-ta’aruf”

3.1: Letters

3.2: Vocabulary

3.3: Dialogue and Reading

3.4: Possessive Pronouns, and the verb "To Like"

3.5: Culture

4: The Family الأسرة “ Al Usrah”

4.1: Letters

4.2: Vocabulary

4.3: Dialogue and Reading

4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا, Taa Marbuta ة

4.5: Culture

5: Numbers الأرقام “Al-Arqam”

5.1: Letters

5.2: Vocabulary

5.3: Dialogue and Reading

5.4: Numbers الأرقام

5.5: Culture

6: At Home في البيت “ fii Albayet”

6.1: Letters

6.2: Vocabulary

6.3: Dialogue and Reading

6.4: Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام, New Verbs and Colors

6.5: Culture

7: Food الطعام "At-Tauam"

7.1: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة

7.2: Vocabulary

7.3: Dialogue and Reading

7.4: Prepositions حروف الجر

7.5: Culture

8: The Weather الطقس "At-tauqes"

8.1: Adjectives in Arabic (Masculine and Feminine)

8.2: Vocabulary

8.3: Dialogue and Reading

8.4: The Arabic Definite Article لام التعريف (الـ)

8.5: Culture

9: At the University في الجامعة “fii Aljamiah”

9.1: The Nisba Adjective

9.2: Vocabulary

9.3: Dialogue and Reading

9.4: Roots الجذور, New Verbs (to read, to write)

9.5: Culture

10: The profession العمل “Al-amel”

10.1: Duals in Arabic

10.2: Vocabulary

10.3: Dialouge and Reading

10.4: Plurals In Arabic

10.5: Culture

Index
Glossary
Detailed Licensing
Detailed Licensing
Cognates Glossary

This page titled Introduction to Arabic is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas et al..

About the authors

Project Lead: Hana Kassas



Figure 1: Hana Kassas. (CC BY)

Professor Hana Kassas is a long-time instructor of the Arabic language, having taught courses in various settings, from Government Persons and heritage speakers to first-time learners and native speakers of Arabic. Her experience has reached across several campuses, including San Diego State University. She has a distinguished career at Cuyumaca Community College, playing an active role in campus organizations and the community. She, with her students, would set up events for Middle Eastern cultural celebrations every semester and have programmed workshops from which all instructors on campus could benefit. She is a champion for her students, and one of her driving goals in developing this OER textbook is to provide quality Arabic education to all, regardless of financial resources. Professor Kassas constantly seeks new opportunities to learn and implement new methods to enhance her teaching strategies and provide her students with the best learning outcomes.

Authors and Team Members

Dr. Layla Bahar Al-Aloom	Maysaa Toma	Roula Aoneh	Samira Murtada
			

Dr. Layla Bahar Al-Aloom	Maysaa Toma	Roula Aoneh	Samira Murtada
Dr. Layla Bahar Al-Aloom holds a Doctoral degree in Curriculum and Instruction Specialization from Capella University. She is a dedicated Arabic language instructor at California State University-Fullerton and Chaffey College. Additionally, she serves as an independent consultant, providing expertise in teacher training, curriculum design, development, and review. Her passion for the Arabic language and culture motivates her to seek innovative strategies to engage students in real-world applications of Arabic language learning. With a long experience in higher education instruction, coaching, and program coordination, Dr. Layla Bahar Al-Aloom is committed to empowering learners on their Arabic language journey.	Maysaa Toma is an Author, instructor, and visual Artist. Maysaa was born and raised in Iraq, then she moves to the United States where she received her Bachelor of Arts in Applied Arts and Sciences Art from the School of Art and Design at San Diego State University, graduated summa cum laude. And received her Master of Arts in Arabic language and linguistics from the California University of Pennsylvania. Maysaa currently resides in San Diego, she works as an Arabic language instructor for all levels, teaching different modalities at San Diego City College and Grossmont College. She also worked as an art teacher and proofreader for e-book stories from English to Arabic and vice versa. Maysaa believes in creating a positive classroom environment where all students feel comfortable, welcomed, and respected. She enjoys instructing students from diverse cultures, and she also feels blessed to have worked on an OER textbook to be available to everyone. Maysaa considers her family, faith, and work the most important things to her. In her free time, if she is not spending time with her friends and family, she spends her time reading, or painting. She believes there is a strong connection between art and language; both can complement and assist each other. She also believes that letters in all languages have beautiful shapes and symbols, as do the letters in the Arabic language. Therefore, Maysaa sometimes uses Arabic letters and words in her paintings to highlight the beauty of the language through her art. She also likes to cook, travel, go to the beach, and sports. Maysaa enjoyed her first experience writing an OER textbook,	Roula Aoneh is an Assistant Professor of Arabic at Cuyamaca College in San Diego, CA. With over 25 years of experience, she brings a strong background in education and leadership within Arabic schools across San Diego County. Her expertise spans sociolinguistics, language contact, Arabic curriculum design, and ESL. She holds a master's degree in Education (TESOL) from Alliant International University and has taught Arabic language, literature, and culture at institutions including UC San Diego, the San Diego Community College District, and Arabic learning centers. In addition to her teaching, Roula actively contributes to academic committees and educational initiatives at Cuyamaca College. She is the author of *My Alif-Yaa*, an introductory Arabic textbook for children widely adopted by Arabic schools across the United States. Passionate about the beauty of the Arabic language, Roula is committed to making it accessible to all learners. Outside of work, she enjoys the outdoors, international travel, and spending good time with family and friends.	

Dr. Layla Bahar Al-Aloom	Maysaa Toma	Roula Aoneh	Samira Murtada
	Introduction to Arabic, and she considered it an interesting and useful experience. Now she is looking forward to authoring more books in the future.		

This page titled About the authors is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

Program Page



An Open Educational Resource Supported by the Academic Senate for California Community Colleges Open Educational Resources Initiative

The Academic Senate for California Community Colleges Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI) was funded by the California legislature in trailer bill language during the summer of 2018. The OERI's mission is to reduce the cost of educational resources for students by expanding the availability and adoption of high quality Open Educational Resources (OER). The OERI facilitates and coordinates the curation and development of OER texts, ancillaries, and support systems. In addition, the OERI supports local OER implementation efforts through the provision of professional development, technical support, and technical resources.

The information in this resource is intended solely for use by the user who accepts full responsibility for its use. Although the author(s) and ASCCC OERI have made every effort to ensure that the information in this resource is accurate, openly licensed, and accessible at press time, the author(s) and ASCCC OERI do not assume and hereby disclaim any liability to any party for any loss, damage, or disruption caused by errors or omissions, whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident, or any other cause.

Please bring all such errors and changes to the attention of Academic Senate of California Community Colleges OER Initiative via e-mail (oeri@asccc.org).

Academic Senate for California Community Colleges
One Capitol Mall, Suite 230
Sacramento, CA 95814

This page titled Program Page is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing***.

This page titled Licensing is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1: AN OVERVIEW OF ARABIC

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the Arabic Alphabet and different shapes.
- Learn the Arabic language diacritics, short vowels, and long vowels.
- Identify the Arabic-Speaking countries and the different dialects.
- Learn the Arabic language parts of speech.

1.1: The Arabic Al phabet الحروف العربية

1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل

1.3: Long Vowels المدود

1.4: Vocabulary- Arabic Speaking Countries

1.5: Grammar

1.6: Culture

Introduction

Watch the video of the introduction to the science of the Arabic Language. In this video, you will understand the differences between the different levels of the Arabic language.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1: An Overview of Arabic is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1.1: The Arabic Al phabet الحروف العربية

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Explore the Arabic Alphabet, its names, and its shapes.
- Learn about the Arabic Language.
- Write your name.

Arabic Alphabet

Introduction

The Arabic language is among the top six of the world's major languages. As the language of the Quraan, the holy book of Islam, it is also widely used throughout the Muslim world. However, the common misconception about Arabs is people think that every Arab must be a Muslim, and that every Muslim must be an Arab, which is just not true. There are Christian Arabs, Jewish Arabs, Arab Druze, and Arabs who subscribe to faiths beyond these.

The Arabic language belongs to the Semitic group of languages, including Hebrew and Amharic. Classical Arabic فصحى "Fuṣḥa" is the language found in the Quraan and used from the period of Pre-Islamic Arabia to the Abbasid Caliphate. The Arabic language is the official language for twenty-two countries spreading from western Asia to North Africa, from the Indian Ocean in the east to the Atlantic Ocean in the west.

An adapted form of Fusha, known as Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), is used nowadays in books, newspapers, on television and radio, taught in schools, and in conversations between educated Arabs from different countries (for example, at international conferences). Local dialects vary considerably, for example, a Moroccan might have difficulty understanding a Syrian, even though they both speak the same language. Other languages – such as Persian, Urdu, and Malay – use adaptations of the Arabic script. Moreover, many Arabic words have been borrowed by other languages.

Arabic Alphabet

The Arabic language system writing is different from English. Arabic is written and read from right to left, unlike English, which is written and read from left to right. There are 28 letters in Arabic and 26 letters in English. The Arabic alphabet of 28 letters is created by placing various combinations of dots or symbols above or below the letters. The script in the Arabic language is written in cursive, and there is no differentiation between the upper and the lower case in Arabic like in English. Arabic letters have four shapes, and each shape is distinguished by its location. Locations of the letters are original, initial, medial, and ending which determine the shape of the letter. Arabic letters are connected except for six letters which are only joined with the preceding letter and marked with an asterisk (*) in the table below. We call these letters one-way connectors. In addition, Arabic sounds use a wider range of mouth and throat positions than English. Arabic sounds use five major articulation places which are the empty space inside the mouth, the throat, the tongue, the two lips, and the nasal cavity.

Arabic Letters Shapes and Sounds in English

Arabic Letters and their counterpart in English

Name of the letter	The Counterpart Sound in English	Original Shape	Initial Shape	Medial Shape	Final Shape
Alif	**A**	ا *	ا	ـا/ـا	ـا/ـا
Baa	**B**	ب	بـ	ـبـ	ـب
Taa	**T**	ت	تـ	ـتـ	ـت
Thaa	**Th (like the sound of "th" in Three)**	ث	ثـ	ـثـ	ـث
Jeem	**J**	ج	جـ	ـجـ	ـج
H'aa	**H (sound of h with friction)**	ح	حـ	ـحـ	ـح
Khaa	**Kh (This sound does not exist in English)**	خ	خـ	ـخـ	ـخ
Daal	**D**	د *	د	ـد/ـد	ـد/ـد
Thaal	**Th (like the sound of "th" in That)**	ذ *	ذ	ـذ/ـذ	ـذ/ـذ
Raa	**R**	ر *	ر	ـر/ـر	ـر/ـر
Zay	**Z**	ز *	ز	ـز/ـز	ـز/ـز
Seen	**S**	س	ســ	ـســ	ـس
Sheen	**sh**	ش	شــ	ـشــ	ـش
Saad	**S (deep s)**	ص	صـ	ـصـ	ـص
Daad	**D (deep d)**	ض	ضـ	ـضـ	ـض
Tuaa	**T (deep t)**	ط	طـ	ـطـ	ـط
Dhaa	**Dh (deep "th")**	ظ	ظـ	ـظـ	ـظ
Aein	**a'**	ع	عـ	ـعـ	ـع
Ghien	**Gh**	غ	غـ	ـغـ	ـغ
Faa	**F**	ف	فـ	ـفـ	ـف
Qaaf	**Q**	ق	قـ	ـقـ	ـق
Kaaf	**K**	ك	كـ	ـكـ	ـك

Name of the letter	The Counterpart Sound in English	Original Shape	Initial Shape	Medial Shape	Final Shape
Laam	**L**	ل	لـ	ـلـ	ـل
Meem	**M**	م	مـ	ـمـ	ـم
Noon	**N**	ن	نـ	ـنـ	ـن
Haa	**H**	ه/هـ	هـ	ـهـ	ـه
Waw	**Wh**	و *	و	ـو / و	ـو/ و
Yaa	**Y**	ي	يـ	ـيـ	ـي

Watch this video, listen to the names of the letters, and try to repeat after him to learn the letters.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Also, watch this video, listen to the names of the letters, and try to repeat after him to learn the letters.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Practice learning the one-way connectors letters.

Query 1.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Practice learning the Arabic Letters

Query 1.1.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Exercise 1.1.1

Name at least five letters that you see in the picture.



Figure 1.1.1: Arabic keyboard. (CC BY 2.0; Binter at German Wikimedia via source)

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 1.1.2

Look at the picture and name the letters, and name the Arabic letters.



Figure 1.1.2: Stop Road Sign. (CCO; talk via source)

Answer available at the end of this section.

Interactive Element

Write /type your name on your notebook based on the Arabic letters' sounds and shape table.

Answers

Exercise 1.1.1

Example: Letters Noon, Meem, Haa, Khaa, Jeem, and H'aa.

Exercise 1.1.2

The letters are Qaaf and Faa.

This page titled 1.1: The Arabic Al phabet الحروف العربية is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the Arabic Script, short vowels, and the diacritics.

Section One: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية

Arabic Script consists of two separate layers: the first layer is consonants, and long vowels, and the second is diacritical marks (accents). Diacritical marks are called Tashkeel in Arabic. "**Tashkeel"** are the marks used as phonetic guides, including the short vowels and the grammatical markers, however they are not included in handwriting. The Arabic language has a one-to-one correspondence between sounds and letters. The Arabic written system is regularly phonetic, which means the words are generally written as they are pronounced. Arabic letters are connected letters and each letter has two connectors, this means the letter can be connected to preceded and followed letters in the same word. However, there are six letters that have one connector from the right side, and can't be connected from the left side. Arabic letters are connected except 6 letters which are only joined with the preceding letter: ا د ذ ر ز و

Example 1.2.1

The letter ب is a two side connector letter. Notice how the letter ب is written in the next four words using the four shapes, and how it is connected to the previous, and followed letters.

بابٌ - بَيْتٌ - بِيع - شَيْبُ

Example 1.2.2

The letter د is a one-side connector letter. Watch the letter د is written in the four words using the four shapes, and how it is connected to the previous letter and disconnected from the following letter in the same word.

دُبٌّ - بَدْر - سَدُ- دود

Section Two: Diacritics التَّشكيل

Short Vowels الحركات

There are three short vowels in Arabic, the length of these short vowels corresponds to the length of most English vowels. Short vowels are indicated in the Arabic Script by symbols written above or below the consonant and dots.

Fatah's sound is "a" and it comes above the letter.

Dhama's sound is "u" and it comes above the letter.

Kasra's sound is "e" and it comes under the letter.

Example: بَ ، بُ ، بِ

Watch the video and listen to the sound of the letters with short vowels: Fatha, Dhama, and Kasra

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The absence of the short vowels "Sukoon" السكون

The word "Sukoon" means quiet, silence in Arabic. Linguistically the concept of "Sukoon" is the absence of a short vowel following the consonant. Also, Arabs use "Sukoon" at the end of the words in spoken Arabic. You should know that no Arabic word starts with "Sukoon", and a new syllable begins after it. The shape of "Sukoon" is a small circle. Also, for your information, the letters that carry "Sukoon" should take longer to pronounce.

The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة

"Shadda" is an Arabic word, and it means strength. "Shadda" is one of the diacritical marks, and it doubles the consonant it is written on. The first consonant has no vowel, and the second carries one of the diacritical marks except "Sukoon." The technique of pronouncing the consonant with "Shadda" is to stress it like stressing the letter T in the English word "Skittle" and stressing the letter Z in the word "Sizzle." "Shadda" can carry the short vowels and Tanween. The shape of "Shadda" is a small w above the letter.

Tanween

Tanween function is like the article "a" or "an" in English which indicates the indefinite article. However, "Tanween" can accompany singular and plural nouns in Arabic because it is the sign of the indefinite article. "Tanween" sign is double of the same short vowel, and it always comes at the end of the nouns only. Verbs do not take tanween.

There are three types of "Tanween." "Tanween" Fateh, Dhama and Kasrah. "Tanween" indicates the indefinite statute of the word, like using the article "a" or "an" for nouns. "Tanween" Fateh needs support, so it always uses an Alif when it comes at the end of the noun, Tanween Dhamah does not need a support, and Tanween Kasrah comes under the letter. Also, the "Tanween" is the sound of the short vowels, and the letter "N" is added to the end of the word after the vowel.

Example 1.2.3

Listen to the audio to hear the sound of the Tanween.

Tanween Fateh تنوين الفتح

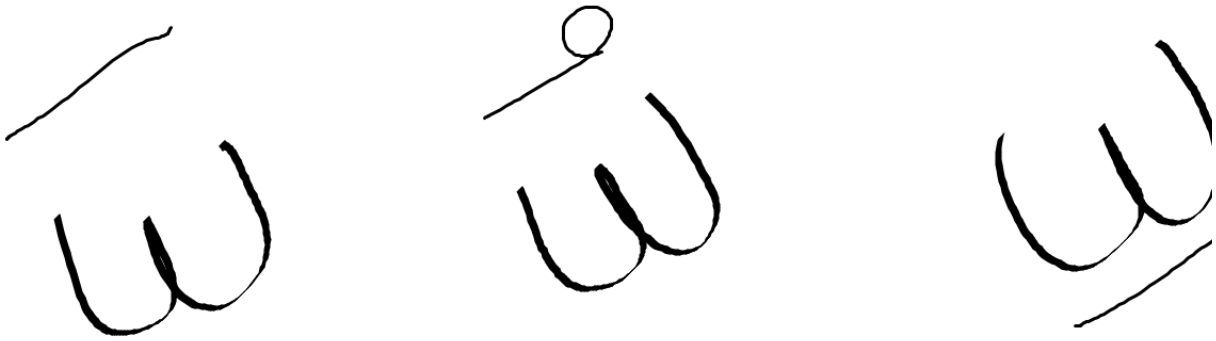
Tanween Dhama تنوين الضم

Tanween Kasra تنوين الكسر

Shapes and sounds of the Short Vowels

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape
Fataha	
Dhama	
Kasra	

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape
Sukoon	

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape
Shadda	

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape
Tanween Fateh	

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape
Tanween Dhama	

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape
Tanween Kasra	

Example: You will see the letters ع ، ل ، م using them in the same order, but using different diacritical marks.

Example 1.2.4

Example: You will see the letters ع ، ل ، م using them in the same order, but using different diacritical marks. You can see the colored diacritical marks in the picture below.

1. عُلِمَ	2. عُلِمْ	3. عَلَمٍ
4. عَلِمَ	5. عَلَماً	6. عَلَمٌ
7. عُلِّمَ	8. عَلَّمَ	9. عِلْمُ
10. عِلْمٌ	11. عِلْماً	12. عِلْمٍ

Watch the video and listen to the pronunciation of the words in orders from 1 to 12 in the audio below.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 1.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 1.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



This page titled 1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks عَلاماتُ التَّشكيل is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1.3: Long Vowels المدود

Long Vowels (Al-Mudood) المدود

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the Arabic letters' articulation places and the long vowels in Arabic.
- Differentiate between the long and short vowels.

Introduction

A letter is a sound that needs an articulation point, so each letter has a different sound and articulation (see figure 1.3.1). Each letter has a general and specific articulation to differentiate the sound and produce particular characteristics that define the sound of the letter.

The Articulation places of the Arabic Letters are:

1. The empty space in the mouth and the throat “Al-jawf”
2. The throat "Al-halq"
3. The tongue "Al-lisan"
4. The lips "As-shafatan"
5. The nasal passage "Al-khayshoom"

The sounds of the long vowels are created when the air vibrates the vocal cords in the larynx. The space in the mouth and throat “Al-jawf” is the articulation place for the three long vowels, so there is no specific point for articulation. There are three long vowels in Arabic, and they are written using three letters. The pronunciation of each long vowel is twice as long as the regular English vowel and double the length of the short vowel in Arabic. The estimated sound length for the long vowel is the time for opening and closing the index (pointer) finger. Syllables in Arabic begin with a consonant with a short vowel and can't start with a long vowel.

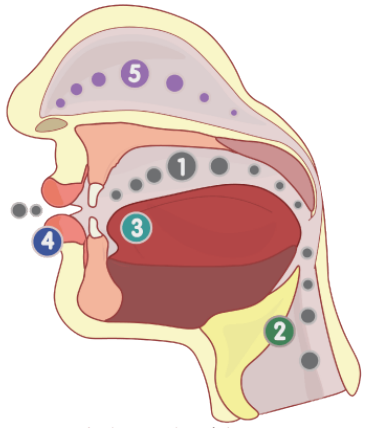


Figure 1.3.1: The five articulation places of the Arabic letters.

Long Vowels in Arabic

Long vowels in Arabic are presented by three letters Alif, Waw, and Yaa. These letters can have different functions as a consonant or long vowel.

The letter Alif is the long vowel ا=aa. Hear this sound in the recording below.

The letter Waw is the long vowel و= oo/uu. Hear this sound in the recording below.

The letter Yaa is the long vowel ي=ee/ii. Hear this sound in the recording below.

Long Vowel Alif (ا)

Pronunciation of the long vowel Alif (ا)

Listen and repeat

Audio

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Audio online

The long vowel Alif "ا" is pronounced "aa" which is the double time of the short vowel "Fataha." The long vowel Alif "ا" is preceded by a consonant with a short vowel "Fataha." Open your mouth the same way when you open your mouth to say "aaa" in front of the doctor to pronounce the long vowel "Alif." You should know that the long vowel Alif following an emphatic consonant takes on

emphatic properties.

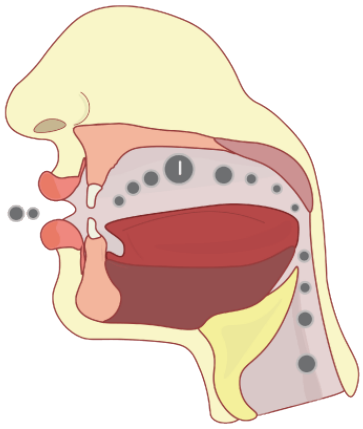


Figure 1.3.2: Pronouncing the long vowel Alif "aa"



Figure 1.3.3: Shape of the mouth, pronouncing the long vowel Alif "aa"

Writing of the long vowel Alif (ا)

The letter Alif is written at the beginning of the word as a single stroke, drawn from top to bottom. In addition, the letter Alif is written from the bottom up when it follows another letter. The letter Alif does not connect to the letter following it, since it does not have a connector from the left side. The letter Alif has one connector from the right side to connect to the preceding letter.

The long vowel Alif (ا)

The form	Final form of the long vowel Alif "ا"	Medial form of the long vowel Alif "ا"	Initial form of the long vowel Alif "ا"	Independent form of the long vowel Alif "ا"
The shape	ـا / ا	ـا	ا	ا

Long Vowel Waw (و)

Pronunciation of the long vowel Waw (و)

Listen and repeat

Audio

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Audio online

The long vowel Waw "و" is pronounced "uu" or "oo" like in the word "wool," which is the double time of the short vowel "Dhama."

Therefore, the long vowel Waw "و" is preceded by a consonant with a short vowel "Dhama." The shape of the mouth when pronouncing the long vowel Waw is a small circle the size of a pencil bottom.

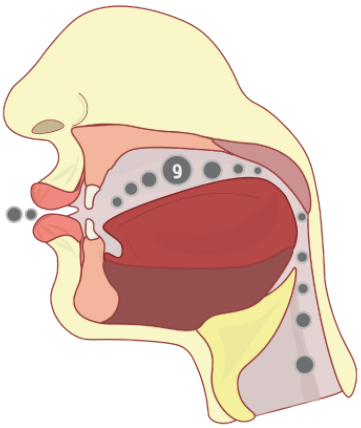


Figure 1.3.1: Pronouncing the long vowel Waw "oo"



Figure 1.3.1: Shape of the mouth, pronouncing the long vowel Waw "oo"

Writing of the long vowel Waw (و)

Like the letter Alif, the letter Waw does not connect to the following letter. To write independent or initial (و) start on the line, loop clockwise to the left and up, and then swing down into the tail, which should dip well below the line. If there is a connector on the right side of the letter, it leads to the beginning point of the loop.

The form	Final form of the long vowel Waw و	Medial form of the long vowel Waw و	Initial form of the long vowel Waw و	Independent form of the long vowel Waw و
The shape	ـو / ـو	ـو	و	و

Long Vowel Yaa (ي)

Pronunciation of the long vowel Yaa (ي)

Listen and repeat

Audio

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Audio online

The long vowel Yaa (ي) is pronounced "ee" or "ii" like in the word "deep," which is the double time of the short vowel "Kasra."

Therefore, the long vowel Yaa "ي" is preceded by a consonant with a short vowel "Kasra." The shape of the mouth when pronouncing the long vowel Yaa is like a straight line.

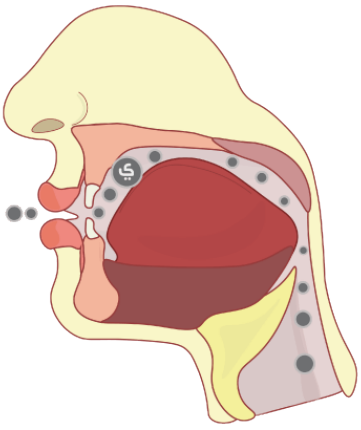


Figure 1.3.1: Pronouncing the long vowel Yaa "ee"



Figure 1.3.1: Shape of the mouth, pronouncing the long vowel Yaa "ee"

Writing of the long vowel Yaa (ي)

The independent and final forms of the letter Yaa (ي) differ from the initial and medial forms. All shapes of (ي) retain the two dots below. Writing the independent (ي), start above the line and curve slightly upwards and around in an s-like shape. Continue below the line into a wide, flat curve, and make sure to bring the tail all the way back up over the line. The initial and medial ي starts with the tooth and puts the dots beneath the body, letter ي connects to the letters that follow and precede it.

The form	Final form of the long vowel Waw ي	Medial form of the long vowel Waw ي	Initial form of the long vowel Waw ي	Independent form of the long vowel Waw ي
The shape	ـي	ـيـ	يـ	ي

Watch this video to learn more about the long and short vowels in Arabic.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 1.3.1

Listen to these words. You hear the word with the short vowels, and then the word with the long vowel.

The Words

Words with three letters with short vowels and the same word with long vowel

The Letters	The word with the short vowels	The word with the long vowel
ع ل م	عَلَم *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this Audio online	عَالَم
ش ب ت	شَبَت	شَابَـت
خ ر ب	خَرَبَ	خَرابَ
ك ت ب	كَتَبَ	كَاتَب

Exercise 1.3.1

Practice to write the long vowels " حروف المد."

Practicing the long vowels المدود

The long vowel	independent form	Initial form	Medial/ middle form	final form
Long vowel Alif **مد الألف**				
Long vowel Waw **مد الواو**				
Long vowel Yaa **مد الياء**				

Answer available at the end of this section.

Match the shape of the mouth when pronouncing the long vowel with the tongue position.

Query 1.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Listen to the audio, and then choose true or false.

Query 1.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 1.3.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 1.3.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 1.3.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 1.3.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Answers

Exercise 1.3.1

The long vowel	independent form	Initial form	Medial/ middle form	final form
Long vowel Alif مد الألف	ا	ا	ـا / ـا	ـا / ـا
Long vowel Waw مد الواو	و	و	ـو / و	ـو / و
Long vowel Yaa مد الياء	ي	ي	ـيـ	ـي

This page titled 1.3: Long Vowels المدود is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1.4: Vocabulary- Arabic Speaking Countries

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Recognize the names of Arabic-speaking countries and their capitals.

Arabic-Speaking Countries

The Arabic-Speaking World consists of 22 countries, and they are located in western Asia and North Africa. The Arabic-Speaking World stretches from the Atlantic Ocean in the west to the Arabian Sea in the East. The Arabic Speaking countries are united by language and culture.

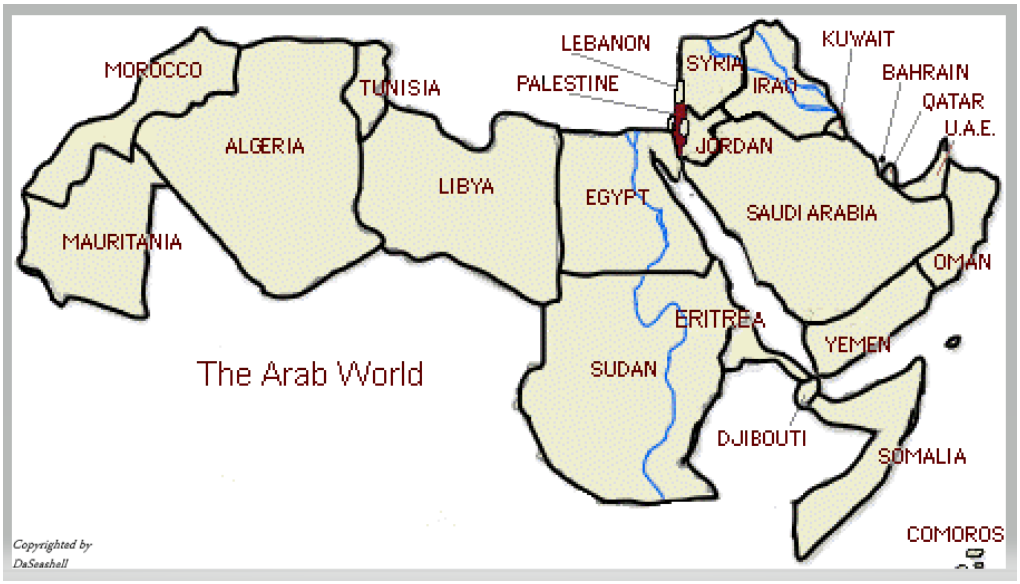


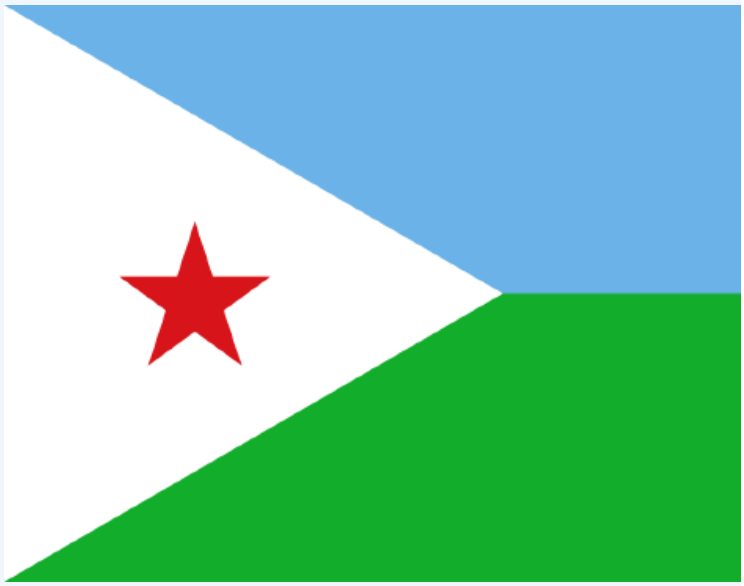
Figure 1.4.1: Arab States. (CC0; DaSeashell via wikimedia)

The Names of the Arabic-Speaking Countries in Alphabetical Order

In this table, you learn the Arab countries' names and their capitals.

Arab Countries and their Capitals البلاد العربية

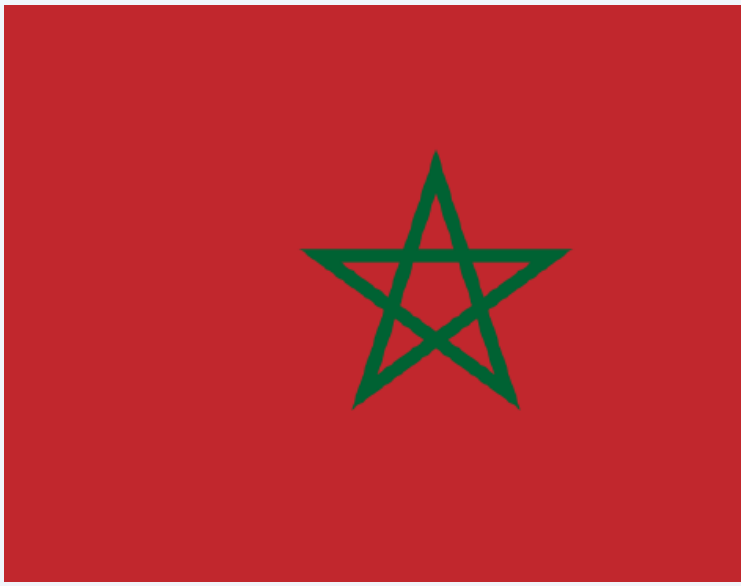
The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Algeria	الجُمْهوريَّةُ الجزائرية الديمقراطية الشعبية	Algeria	الجزائر العاصمة	 Figure 1.4.1: Algerian Flag. (CC0; SKopp via wikimedia)
Bahrain	مملكةُ البحرين	Manama	المنامة	 Figure 1.4.2: Flag of Bahrain. (CC0; Zscout370 via wikimedia)

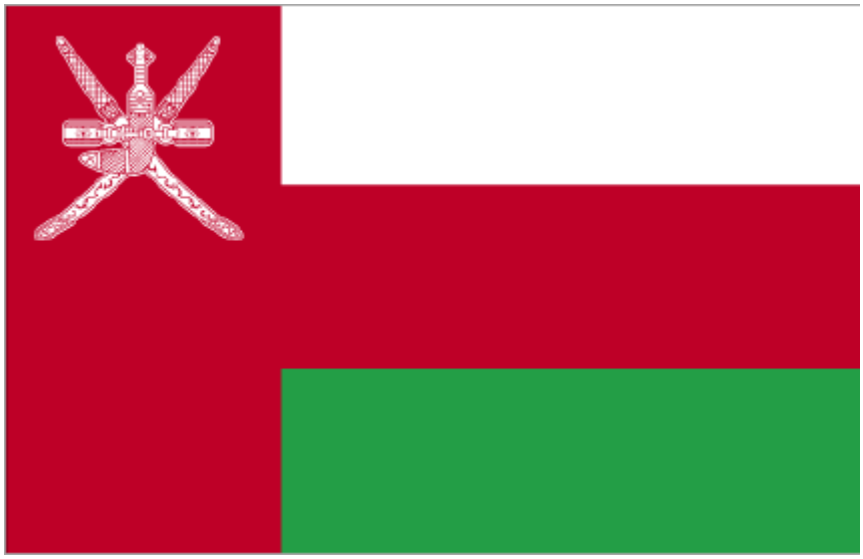
The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Comoros	جُزر القمر	Moroni	موروني	 Figure 1.4.3: Flag of the Comoros. (CC0; Sangjinhwa via wikimidia
Djibouti	جيبوتي	Djibouti	جيبوتي العاصمة	 Figure 1.4.4: Flag of Djibouti. (CC0; unknown author via wikimedia

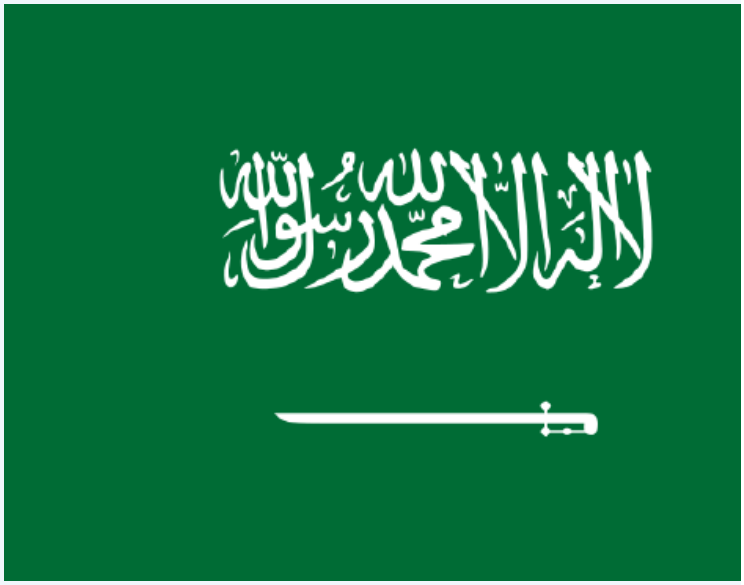
The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Egypt	جُمْهوريَّةُ مِصر العربية	Cairo	القاهرة	 Figure 1.4.5: The flag of Egypt. (CC0; Open Clip Art via Wikimedia
Iraq	جُمْهوريَّةُ العراق	Baghdad	بغداد	 Figure 1.4.6: Flag of Iraq. (CC0; unknown author via wikimedia)

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Jordan	المملكة الأردنية الهاشمية	Amman	عَمّان	 Figure 1.4.7: Flage of Jordan. (CC0; SKopp via wikimedia)
Kuwait	دَولةُ الكويت	Kuwait	الكويت العاصمة	 Figure 1.4.8: Flag of Kuwait. (CC0; SKopp via wikimedia)

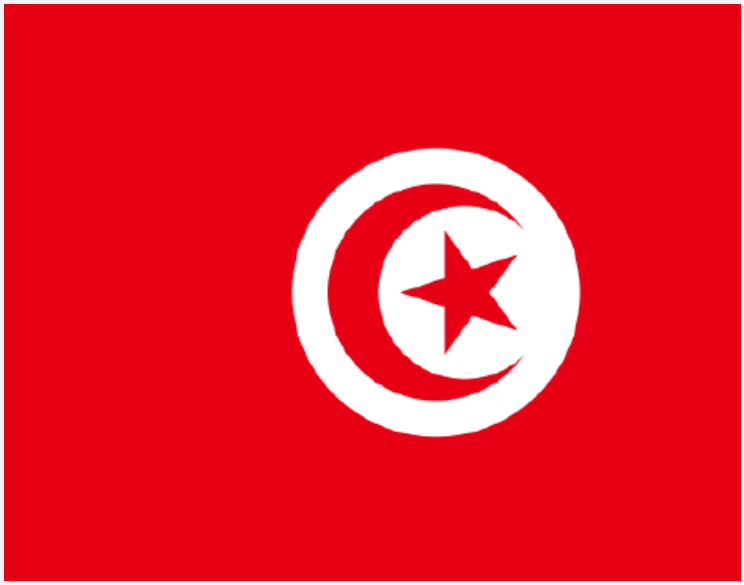
The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Lebanon	الجُمْهوريَّةُ اللُبنانية	Beirut	بَيروت	 Figure 1.4.9: Flag of Lebanon. (CC0; CIA World Factbook via wikimed
Libya	ليبيا	Tripoli	طرابلس	 Figure 1.4.10: Copy and Paste Caption here. (CC0; Victor graphics via wik

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Mauritania	الجُمْهوريَّةُ الإسلامية الموريتانية	Nouakchott	نواكشوط	 Figure 1.4.11: Flag of Muritania. (CC0; unknown author via wikimedi
Morocco	المغرب	Rabat	الرباط	 Figure 1.4.12: Flag of Morocco. (CC0; Denelson83, Zscout370 via wikin

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Oman	عُمان	Muscat	مسقط	 Figure 1.4.13: Flag of Oman. (CC0; CIA Word Factbook via wikimed
Palestine	فلسطين	Jerusalem	القدس	 Figure 1.4.14: Flag of Palestine . (CC0; Orionist via wikimedia)

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Qatar	قَطر	Doha	الدوحة	 Figure 1.4.15: Flag of Qatar. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية	Riyadh	الرياض	 Figure 1.4.16: Flag of Saudi Arabia. (CC0; unknow author via wikimed
Somalia	جُمْهوريَّةُ الصومال	Mogadishu	مقديشو	 Figure 1.4.17: Flag of Somalia. (CC0; Direktor via wikimedia)

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Sudan	جُمْهوريَّةُ السُّودان	Khartoum	الخرطوم	 Figure 1.4.18: Flag of Sudan. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Syria	الجُمْهوريَّةُ العربية السُّورية	Damascus	دمشق	 Figure 1.4.19: Flag of Syria. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Tunisia	الجُمْهوريَّةُ التونسية	Tunis	تونس العاصمة	 Figure 1.4.20: Flag of Syria. (CC0; Various Wikimedia Commons' contributors v
United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة	Abu Dhabi	أبو ظبي	 Figure 1.4.21: Flag of United Arab Emirates. (CC0; unknow author via wik

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Yemen	اليَمن	Sanaa	صنعاء	

Figure 1.4.22: Flag of Yemen. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)

Practice learning the Arabic-Speaking Countries and their flags.

Query 1.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Guess the answer.

Query 1.4.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.4.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.4.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Check out this Crossword puzzle to learn more about Arabic-Speaking Countries and their capitals.

Query 1.4.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 1.4: Vocabulary- Arabic Speaking Countries is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1.5: Grammar

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the Arabic parts of speech (nouns, verbs, and particles).

Arabic Parts of Speech

Arabic words are divided into three categories of words. They are nouns الأسماء, verbs الأفعال, and الحروف particles. Therefore, learning Arabic will be more accessible by understanding the type of each word.

The noun الاسم - "Alisem"

Like English, the Arabic word "*Isem*" is used to identify the nouns, such as proper and common nouns (things). Nouns in Arabic can be definite or indefinite, singular or plural, masculine or feminine.

The Verb الفعل - "Alfea'l"

Verb فعل is an action word that has a tense attached to it. The tenses are past, present, and future.

The Particle الحرف - "AlHaref"

Harf حرف is a word that makes no sense on its own unless it accompanies another word after it. Check these examples in Arabic and English.

Example 1.5.1

Prepositions in English and Arabic: To إلى ,in في ,on عَلى etc.

Examples to learn the Arabic Propositions حروف الجر

The sentence with the proposition in English	The sentence with the preposition in Arabic	The sentence in Transliteration
I go **to** school.	أذهب **إلى** المدرسة	Adhhab 'iilaa almadrasa
The pen is **on** the table.	القلم **على** الطاولة	Alqalam ealaa altaawila
The students are **in** the house.	الطلاب **في** البيت	Atulaab fi albeit

Types of Arabic Sentences

There are two types of Arabic sentences: Nominal and verbal sentences. The nominal sentence starts with a noun or a pronoun, and the verbal sentence begins with a verb. A nominal sentence does not need a verb like in English and consists of a subject المبتدأ and a predicate الخبر.

Example 1.5.2

Examples of Nominal and Verbal Sentences

	Nominal Sentences	Verbal Sentence
The sentence in Arabic	الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ	يَذْهَبُ عَـلي إلى الْبَيْتِ
The sentence in Transliteration	Al-baytu Kabeeron	Yazahabu Ali Ilaa Al-bayti
The meaning in English	The house is big.	Ali goes to the house.

Watch this video to learn more about Arabic speech parts. Also, you should know that the video has advanced information:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.5: Grammar is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1.6: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Recognize the different dialects in Arabic-Speaking World.

Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect Variation

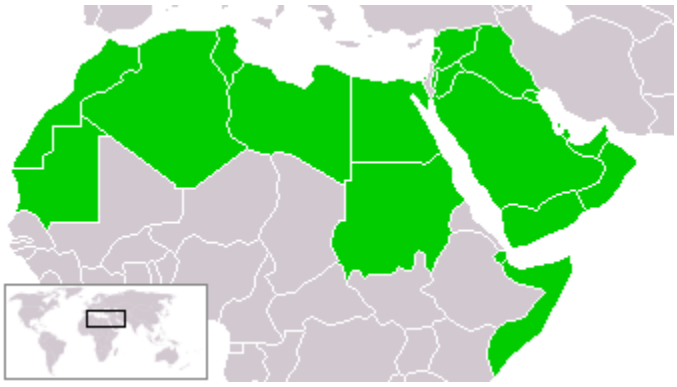


Figure 1.6.1: Arab world map (CC BY-SA 3.0, Mirv via wikimedia)

The First step to learning Arabic

The first step to learning Arabic is to learn classical Arabic (MSA), and then learn the preferred dialect. Each Arabic Country has a different dialect, and in this book, you will study the MSA. Learning a dialect will be acquired easily after learning MSA, and the Egyptian dialect is the most popular.

Watch the video and listen to different dialects of Arabic. Each one says the same dialog in his dialect. The dialog is:

- Greeting
- My name is ..., I am from, and this is how the Arabic dialect sounds
- Today I woke up and ate breakfast with my family in the kitchen

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.6: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

2: WELCOME أهلاً وسهلاً “AHLAN WA SAHLAN”

Chapter Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the five letters: ء - ي - ن - ث - ت - ب (consonant and vowels) with their four different shapes and sounds.
- Greet someone in a formal and informal situation.
- Learn the personal pronouns هُم - هي - هو - نحنُ - أنتُم - أنتَ - أنتِ - أنا
- Learn about the Levant countries (Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, and Palestine).

1: Letters ب ت ث ي ء

2: Vocabulary

3: Dialogue and Reading

4: Subject Pronouns

5: Culture

This page titled 2: Welcome أهلاً وسهلاً “Ahlan Wa Sahlan” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters ء ي ن ث ت ب in their different shapes.
- Pronounce the letters ء ي ن ث ت ب with short and long vowels.

2.1.1 Formation & Articulation Points

This table introduces the letters you will learn in this chapter:

Name of Letter	Shape of letter	Pronunciation
Baa'	ب	
Taa'	ت	
Thaa'	ث	
Noon	ن	
Yaa'	ي	
Hamza	ء	

Query 1.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

2.1.2. The Letters with Diacritical Marks (Short Vowels) & Long Vowels:

This table presents each of the letters with their different diacritical marks and long vowels:

Letter with Long Vowels	Letter with Short Vowels	Letter	Audio Recording
با بو بي	بْ بَ بُ بِ	ب	
تا تو تي	تْ تَ تُ تِ	ت	

Letter with Long Vowels	Letter with Short Vowels	Letter	Audio Recording
ثا ثو ثي	ثْ ثَ ثُ ثِ	ث	
نا نو ني	نْ نَ نُ نِ	ن	
يا يو يي	يْ يَ يُ يِ	ي	
	أْ أَ أُ إِ	ء	

The video below presents the pronunciation of all Arabic letters with Diacritical Marks (Short Vowels):

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The video below presents the Diacritical Marks and how they are used in different grammatical cases in definite words:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 1.2.1

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.2.2

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

The Letter Baa ب

Pronunciation of The Letter Baa' ب

The letter Baa' ب is pronounced like "*b*" in English. It is a consonant letter that gives the vowels a frontal quality. The place of articulation for the letter Baa' is by closing the two lips together, using the wet part of the lower lip. Baa' connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

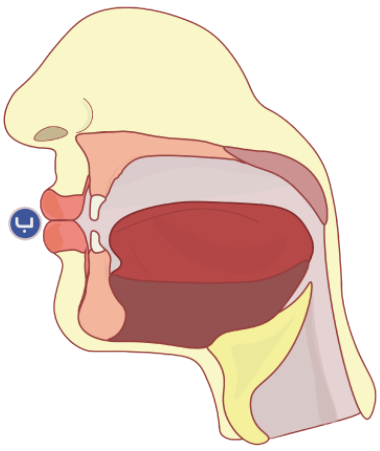


Figure 1.2: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ب

How to write the letter ب

The letter ب is a connecting letter and attaches to any letter preceding or following it within the same word. The main parts of this letter are the initial tooth and the dot beneath the body, which remain the same in all four shapes of the letter When this letter is placed at the end of a word, a second tooth is added at the tail of the letter. The tail is omitted when ب connects to another letter. You write the letter ب on the line from right to left. Begin with a small tooth or a small hook بـ then continue straight over the line, and end with another hook or tooth. After that, place the dot below the body of the letter. To write the letter ب at the beginning of the word, you write the tooth, and then continue straight as the exact length of the body (connector) and place the dot under the tooth بـ. Letter Baa ب has two connectors or segments. When ب occurs in the middle position, the letter connects to the preceding and following letters ـبـ. The final ـب looks like the independent ب. It connects to the preceding letter with the attached segment unless the previous letter does not have a connector. (Watch the video)

How to write the letter ب

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـب	ـبـ	بـ	ب

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Baa' ب :

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 2.1.2.3

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

The Letter Taa' ت

Pronunciation of The Letter Taa' ت

The letter Taa' is pronounced using the tip of the tongue with the roots of the top two incisors with aspiration. Taa' connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

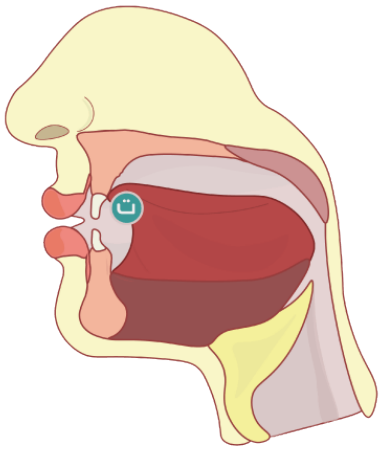


Figure 1.3: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ت

How to write the letter ت

The letter ت has the same shapes as the letter ب in all placements. However, it is written with two dots above its body, similar to a dash. (see the table and video)

How to write the letter ت

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـت	ـتـ	تـ	ت

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Taa' ت :

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 2.1.2.4

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

The Letter Thaa' ث

Pronunciation of The Letter Thaa' ث

The letter Thaa' is pronounced like the sound of "*th*" in the word three, thumb, and truth. The articulation point of Thaa' ث is the tip of the tongue with the ends of the upper two incisors. Thaa' connects from both ends when it is in the middle position. (see the table and figure)

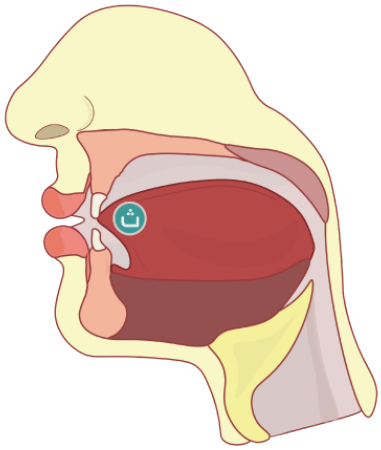


Figure 1.4: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ث

How to write the letter ث

The letter ث is a connecting letter with two connectors, and it has the same shape as the letters ب ت. The letter ث is written like ب ت, but has three dots on the top. In hand-writing, the three dots are connected and they appear as the shape of the upside-down, English letter "v".

(Watch the video)

How to write the letter ث

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـث	ـثـ	ثـ	ث

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Thaa' ث :

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 2.1.2.5

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

The Letter Noon ن

Pronunciation of The Letter Noon ن

This letter Noon ن is pronounced using the tip of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the gum like the English word "noon." This letter connects from both ends when it is in the middle position. (see the table and figure)

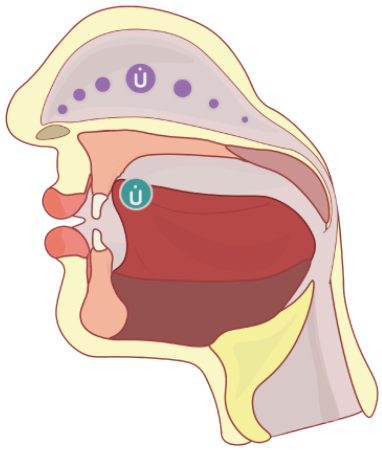


Figure 1.5: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ن

How to write the letter ن

The letter ن is a connecting letter whose shape resembles the ب in the initial نـ, and medial position ـنـ, except for the placement of the dot above the letter. It differs from ب in that the independent and final forms of ن take a characteristic tail shape that dips well below the line.

In the final position, ـن begins with a tooth and then dips immediately into a deep tail below the line, then comes back up across the line.

How to write the letter ن

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـن	ـنـ	نـ	ن

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Noon ن :

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 2.1.2.6

Highlight the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

The Letter Yaa' ي

Pronunciation of The Letter Yaa' ي

The letter Yaa' **ي** is pronounced “ee” when acting as a vowel. It can also be a consonant at the beginning of a word, middle, or end, and it can carry a short vowel, be preceded, or be followed by a long vowel.

The consonant yaa' **ي** is pronounced like the sound of the English letter "*y*" in the word "yes." Yaa' place of articulation is in the middle of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth. It connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

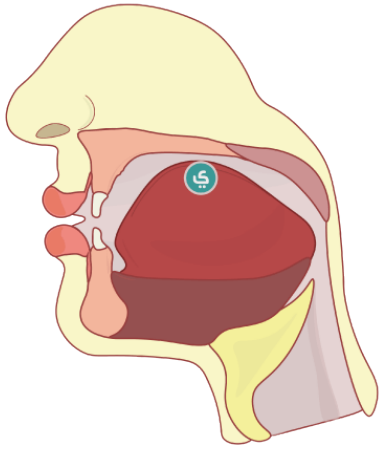


Figure 1.6: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter **ي**

How to write the letter ي

The letter ي is a connecting letter. The letter ي is written like ب ت ث in the initial and medial positions. When writing the independent ي, begin above the line and curve slightly upwards and around in an s-like shape. Continue below the line into a broad, flat curve, and bring the tail back up over the line. You write the final ي the same, but with the addition of a segment. (see the table and watch the video)

How to write the letter ي

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـي	ـيـ	يـ	ي

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Yaa' ي :

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 2.1.2.7

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

The Consonant Hamza ئ - ؤ - أ - ء

Pronunciation of The Hamza ء

It is a sound you make in English when you say a word that begins with a vowel, like: apple, igloo, egg, order, if, etc. In linguistic terminology, this sound is called a glottal stop. The articulation place of the ء is at the deepest part of the throat which is the furthest away from the mouth and the closest to the chest.

To pronounce ء: say *"uh-oh"* several times, as you pronounce the first vowel that point of the place is the articulation of the "Hamza" ء.

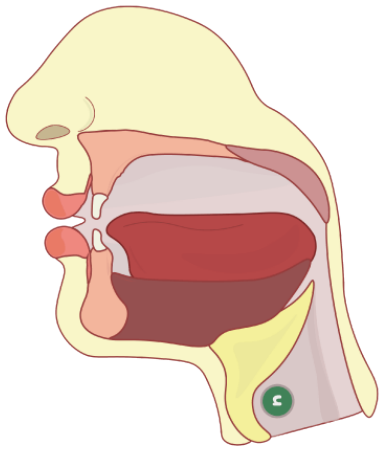


Figure 1.7: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the Consonant Hamza ء

How to write the consonant ء

The actual shape of "Hamza" ء is a small "c" shape, which continues into a line on the bottom. (See the table and Video)

How to write the consonant ء

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـأ - ـؤ - ـئ	ـئـ	ئـ	ء - أ - ؤ - ئ

The video below demonstrates how to write the Consonant Hamza ء

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 2.1.2.8

Highlight the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

2.1.3. Activities:

Query 2.1.3.1

Match each letter with its place of articulation:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 1.3.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

2.2.1. Vocabulary

This table provides vocabulary consisting of the letters you have learnt so far:

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written	Recordi
 Girl	Bint	Girl	بِنْت	
 Figs	Teen	Figs	تين	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written	Recordi
 Door	Baab	door	باب	
 Furniture	Athaath	furniture	أثاث	
 Clothes	Thyaab	Clothes	ثِياب	
 Brown	Bunni	Brown	بُنّي	
 House	Bayiet	House	بَيْت	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written	Recordi
 I/Me	Ana	I/ me	أنا	
 You (m.)	Anta	you (m.)	أنتَ	
 You (f.)	Anti	you (f.)	أنتِ	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written	Recordi
 Beirut	Bayroot	Beirut	بَيروت	
 YouTube	Youtube	YouTube	يوتيوب	

2.2.2. Cognate Words

Cognates are words used in multiple languages that originate from the same linguistic root. Some examples are the words **Tennis**, **Piano**, **Pizza**, **Plastic**, **Petrol**, **Bank**, and **Balloon**.

The table below presents examples of famous cognate words that are used in English and Arabic:

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image	Recording Pronunciati
Tennis	Tennis/تنس	 Tennis	
Piano	Piano/بيانو	 Piano	

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image	Recording Pronunciati
Pizza	Pizza/بيتزا	 Pizza	
Plastic	Plasteek/بلاستيك	 Plastic	

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image	Recording Pronunciati
Petrol	Petrol/بترول	 Petrol	
Bank	Bank/بنك	 **Bank;** CC BY-SA 4.0	

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image	Recording Pronunciati
Balloon	Balon/بالون	 Balloon	

2.2.3. Activities

Query 2.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.4

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.5

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.7

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.8

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.9

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.10

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.11

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.12

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.13

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.14

Choose the correct answer(s):

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.15

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.16

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.17

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.18

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.19

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.20

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.21

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 2.3.22

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the different greetings in the Arabic speaking world.
- Greet and reply to others at different times of the day.

2.3.1: Greetings

This table introduces you to everyday greetings and their replies:

Reply	Greeting	Recording
أهلاً وسهلاً Ahlan wa sahlan Hello/Hi	مرحباً Marhaban Hello/Hi	
وعليكم السّلام Wa alaykum Assalam And peace be upon you	السّلام عليكم Assalamu alaykum Peace be upon you	
صباح النّور Sabahu annour Good morning	صباح الخير Sabahu alkhayr Good morning	
مساء النّور Masa u annour Good evening	مساء الخير Masau alkhayr Good evening	
بخير والحمد لله Bikhayr wa alhamdu lillah Fine, thank God	كيف حالكَ؟ Kayfa haluka How are you? (male addressee)	

Reply	Greeting	Recording
بخير، شكراً لسؤالكَ Bikhayr, shukran lisu'aalika Fine, thanks for asking	كيف حالكِ؟ Kayfa haluki How are you? (female addressee)	
اسمي بن Ismi Ben My name's Ben	ما اسمكَ؟ Ma ismuka? What's your name? (male addressee)	
اسمي تينا Ismi Tina My name's Tina	ما اسمكِ؟ Ma ismuki? What's your name? (female addressee)	
وأنا أيضاً Wa ana aydhan Nice to meet you, too	تشرّفنا Tasharrafna Nice to meet you	
إلى اللقاء Ila alliqa'a See you	أراكَ لاحقاً Araka lahikan See you later	
مع السلامة Ma'a alsalama Bye	مع السلامة Ma'a alsalama Bye	

2.3.2. Activities

Query 3.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Interactive Element

Watch this video in Arabic, listen carefully, and name the greeting that you hear.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Activity

Practice greetings with your classmates (peers). Say your names, ask for your peers' names, practice different greetings, and say goodbyes.

This page titled 3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

4: Subject Pronouns

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- identify some of the separate subject personal pronouns with their different genders - **أنا - أنتَ - أنتِ - أنتم - نحن - هو - هي - هم**

Separate Subject Personal Pronouns

This table will introduce you to the Separate Subject Pronouns:

Pronoun in English	Separate Pronoun in Arabic	Number of People and Gender	Pronunciation	Recording
I	أنا	1st person singular (masculine/feminine)	Ana	
We	نحن	1st person plural (masculine/feminine)	Nahnu	
You (m.)	أنتَ	2nd person singular (masculine)	Anta	
You (f.)	أنتِ	2nd person singular (feminine)	Anti	
You (pl. m.)	أنتم	2nd person plural (masculine)	Antom	
He	هو	3rd person singular (masculine)	Huwa	
She	هي	3rd person singular (feminine)	Heya	

Pronoun in English	Separate Pronoun in Arabic	Number of People and Gender	Pronunciation	Recording
They (m.)	هم	3rd person plural (masculine)	Hom	

Video

Watch the video to learn the subject pronouns in context.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Activities

Query 4.2.1

Match the sounds with the correct separate subject personal pronouns:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Watch the interactive video below, which has different types of interactions through it to practicse subject pronouns. Then, make sure to click continue to proceed through the video.

Query 4.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

12948

This page titled 4: Subject Pronouns is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- learn about the four countries of the Levant, their famous cities, most famous historical places, and their traditional food and clothes.

The Levant

The Levant consists of four Arab countries, which are Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, and Palestine.



Figure 5.1: The Map of Levant Countries in the Middle East. (SpLoT, CC)

Countries of the Levant

This table will introduce you to the four countries of the Levant with their capital cities:

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The Name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	Flag

Syria	سورية Souria	Damascus	دمشق Dimashq	 Syria
Lebanon	لبنان Lubnan	Beirut	بيروت Bayroot	 Lebanon

Jordan	الأردن Al Urdon	Amman	عمّان Amman	 Jordan
Palestine	فلسطين Filasteen	Jerusalem	القدس Al Quds	 Palestine

Countries and Famous Cities

Syria (Syrian Arab Republic)

The Syrian Arab Republic is an Arab country located in west Asia. It borders Turkey to the north, Lebanon and Palestine to the south-west, the Mediterranean Sea to the west, Jordan to the south, and Iraq to the east.

Population: 17.5 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Damascus.

Currency: Syrian Pounds (SYP).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure 5.2: Map of Syria. (Copyright; Rightmeow2, via source)

This table shows the major cities in Syria:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Damascus	دمشق	Dimashq	 Damascus; CC BY 4.0 by Vyacheslav Argenberg

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Aleppo	حلب	Halab	 **Aleppo**; CC BY 2.0
Homs	حمص	Hims	 **Homs**; public domain

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Hama	حماة	Hama	 **Hama**; CC BY 4.0 by Vyacheslav Argenberg
Latakia	اللاذقيّة	Al Lathikiya	 **Latakia**; CC BY-SA 3.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Deir Ez Zour	دير الزور	Deir Ez Zour	 **Deir Ez Zour**; CC BY-SA 4.0

Lebanon (Republic of Lebanon)

The Republic of Lebanon is an Arab country located in west Asia. It borders Syria to the north and east, Palestine to the south,and the Mediterranean Sea to the west.

Population: 6.825 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Beirut.

Currency: Lebanese Pounds (LBP).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure 5.3: Lebanon Orthographic Map. (**Ssolbergj**; Licensed SA)

This table shows the major cities in Lebanon:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Beirut	بيروت	Bayroot	 **Beirut**; CC BY-SA 3.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Jounieh	جونية	Jounieh	 **Jounieh**; CC BY-SA 4.0
Zahle	زحلة	Zahle	 **Zahle**; public domain

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Tripoli	طرابلس	Trablos	 **Tripoli;** public domain
Byblos	جبيل	Jubeil	 **Byblos;** CC BY-SA 4.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Baalbek	بعلبك	Baalbak	 **Baalbek**; CC BY-SA 2.0

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan)

The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan is an Arab country located in west Asia. It borders Syria to the north, Palestine to the west, Saudi Arabia to the south and south-east, and Iraq to the north-east.

Population: 10.2 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Amman.

Currency: Jordanian Dinar (JOD).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure 5.4: Jordan Orthographic M (Rob984; Licensed SA)

This table shows the major cities in Jordan:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Amman	عمّان	Amman	 **Amman**; CC BY 4.0
As Salt	السلط	As Salt	 **As Salt**; public domain

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Irbid	إربد	Irbed	 **Irbid**; CC BY-SA 4.0
Al Mafraq	المفرق	Al Mafraq	 **Al Mafraq**; CC BY-SA 3.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Aqaba	العقبة	Al Aqaba	 **Aqaba**; public domain
Madaba	مأدبا	Ma'daba	 **Madaba**; CC BY-SA 4.0

Palestine (State of Palestine)

The State of Palestine is an Arab country located in west Asia. It borders Lebanon to the north, the Mediterranean Sea to the west, Egypt to the south-west, Jordan to the east, and Syria to the north-east.

Population: 4.803 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Jerusalem.

Currency: Palestine Pounds, Jordanian Dinar (JOD), Egyptian Pounds (EGP), and New Shekel (ILS).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure 5.5: This figure presents the major cities of Palestine. GNU general public license

This table shows the major cities in Palestine:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Jerusalem	القدس	Al Quds	 **Jerusalem;** CC BY-SA 4.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Gaza	غزّة	Ghazza	 **Gaza**; public domain
Nablus	نابلس	Nablus	 **Nablus**; CC BY-SA 1.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Khan Yunis	خان يونس	Khan Yunis	 **Khan Yunis**; CC BY-SA 4.0
Bethlehem	بيت لحم	Beit Lahm	 **Bethlehem**; CC BY-SA 3.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Ramallah	رام الله	Ramallah	 **Ramallah**; CC BY-SA 3.0

Famous Historical Places

Syria

The video below presents a tour around Syria's capital city Damascus:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Umayyad Mosque - Damascus

The Umayyad Mosque (Al-Masjed Al-Umawi - المسجد الأموي) is located in the old city of Damascus. The site of the Umayyad Mosque has been a spot for worship since the Iron Age. During the age of the Aramaean State, it was a temple dedicated to the god of thunderstorms and rain Hadad-Ramman. After the Roman Empire conquered Damascus in 64 BCE, they assimilated Hadad-Ramman with their god of thunder Jupiter, and thus the temple became the Temple of Jupiter. In 391, the temple was converted into a cathedral by the Christian Emperor Theodosius. With the arrival of Islam during the Umayyad period, the Byzantine cathedral was still used by local Christians, but a prayer room (Musalla - مصلّى) was built for Muslims in the southeastern part of the building. Since the prayer room could not accommodate the increasing number of Muslims, the 6th Umayyad Caliph decided to construct a congregational mosque on the site of the cathedral in 706. It was completed in 715 after his death. It remains a Muslim mosque until the present day and is one of most famous touristic attractions in Damascus.



Figure 5.6: The Umayyad Mosque.CC BY 4.0 by Vyacheslav Argenberg licensed CC BY 4.0

The Citadel of Aleppo - Aleppo

The Citadel of Aleppo (Qaleit Halab - قلعة حلب) is a castle located in the old city of Aleppo, northern Syria. It was built in the 3rd millennium BC. It witnessed many civilizations over time including the Armenians, the Greeks, the Byzantines, the Ayyubids, the Mamlouks, and the Ottomans. It is one of the most famous tourist attractions in Aleppo.



Figure 5.7: The Citadel of Aleppo. CC BY 2.0

Norias of Hama - Hama

The Norias of Hama (Nawaeer Hama - نواعير حماه) are a series of 17 historic water-raising machines for irrigation, along the Orontes River in the city of Hama, Syria. It is thought that the norias date back to the late 12th century CE.



Figure 5.8: The Norias of Hama. CC BY-SA 4.0

Lebanon

The video below presents a tour around Lebanon:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Roman Baths - Beirut

The Roman Baths (Al-Hammamat Al-Romanieh - الحمّامات الرومانيّة) is an ancient bath site in the Roman city of Berytus. The Roman bathhouse was a meeting place for all citizens. Roman Berytus had 4 bath complexes, the first of which was built in the 1st century. In 551 AD, the Berytus earthquake happened and destroyed the baths. Today, one of the baths is used for as a concert site.



Figure 5.9: Roman Baths. CC BY-SA 3.0

Byblos Citadel - Byblos

Byblos Citadel (Qalaat Jubail - قلعة جبيل) was built in the 12th century by the Crusaders. It was built from local limestones and the remains of Roman buildings. It is one of Byblos's most famous touristic attractions.



Figure 5.10: Byblos Citadel. CC BY-SA 3.0

Temple of Jupiter - Baalbek

The Temple of Jupiter (Maabad Jupiter - معبد جوبيتر) was a Roman temple located in the temple complex of Baalbek, Lebanon. It was the biggest temple dedicated to Jupiter all around the Roman Empire. It took about three centuries to make, between 16 BC and AD 60.



Figure 5.11: Temple of Jupiter. CC BY 4.0 by Vyacheslav Argenberg

Jordan

The video below presents a tour around Jordan:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Roman Theater - Amman

Amman's Roman Theater (Al-Mudarraj Al-Romani - المدرّج الروماني) is an amphitheater located in the eastern part of Amman, Jordan. It dates back to the 2nd century and consists of about 6,000 seats.



Figure 5.12: Roman Theater. CC BY-SA 4.0

Petra - Southern Jordan

Petra (Al-Batraa - البتراء) is a historical and archeological city in the south of Jordan. It is believed that Petra was built around 312 BC. It is located about 150 miles south of both Jerusalem and Amman, the capital of Jordan, and about midway between Damascus, Syria, and the Red Sea, making it ideally suited as a hub of commerce in the area. It was thus established as a trading post by the Nabateans, who are an indigenous Bedouin tribe in Jordan.



Figure 5.13: Petra. CC BY 2.0

Rum Valley - Southern Jordan

Rum Valley (Wadi Rum - وادي رَم), also known as Valley of the Moon, is the largest valley in Jordan and is cut into granite rock and sandstone. It has been inhabited by various cultures since prehistoric times, one of which was the Nabataeans who left behind petroglyphs, inscriptions, and temple.



Figure 5.14: Rum Valley. CC BY-SA 2.0

Palestine

The video below presents a drone tour around one of Palestine's most famous cities Gaza:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Al Aqsa Mosque - Jerusalem

Al Aqsa Mosque (Al-Masjed Al-Aqsa - المسجد الأقصى) is an Islamic shrine located in the Old City of Jerusalem. It was build in 691-692 CE during the Umayyad period, situated on top of the site of the Second Jewish Temple, which in turn was built around 516 BCE to replace the destroyed Solomon's Temple. The last was destroyed by the Romans in 70 CE. Al Aqsa Mosque is the oldest surviving work of Islamic architecture.



Figure 5.15: Al Aqsa Mosque. GNU Free Documentation License

Monastery of Temptation - Jericho

The Monastery of Temptation (Deir al-Quruntul - دير القرنطل) is a Greek Orthodox monastery located near Jericho, Palestine. It is where Jesus is said to have been tempted by the devil during his 40 days of fasting. It now serves as a tourist attraction.



Figure 5.16: Monastery of Temptation. CC BY-SA 3.0

Khan Al Umdan - Acre

The Inn of the Columns (Khan Al Umdan - خان العمدان) is the best preserved Khan in Acre. It was built during the Ottoman Era and consists of forty colums made from granite. It was considered an important trading spot due to its proximity to the port. It now serves as a prominent tourist attraction in Acre.



Figure 5.17: Khan Al Umdan. CC BY-SA 3.0

Traditional Food and Clothes

Traditional Food

The Levant countries are famous for their tasty dishes all over the world. Many dishes are found in common between all four Levantine countries with little to no difference in ingredients, but the names sometimes vary from one country to another.

This table presents the most famous traditional dishes in the countries of the Levant:

Region	Video
Traditional food in Syria	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Traditional food in Lebanon	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Region	Video
Traditional food in Jordan	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Traditional food in Palestine	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

This table presents how to make some of the most famous traditional food in the Levantine countries:

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Shawarma (Chicken)	شاورما (دجاج)	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 **Shawarma**; CC BY-SA 3.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Hummus	حمّص	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 **Hummus** by Beyrouthhh; CC BY 3.0

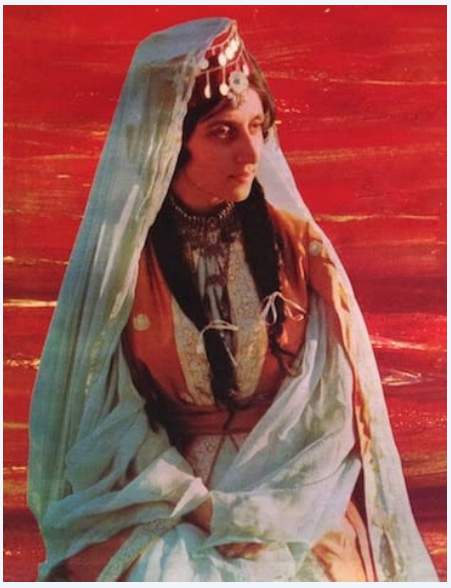
Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Kibbeh	كبّة	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 **Kibbeh**; CC BY-SA 3.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Tabbouleh	تبّولة	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 **Tabbouleh**; Pixabay License

Traditional Clothes

In each of the Levantine countries, there are different traditional clothes that come as a result of different cultures and religious backgrounds of the different areas. This is why there is no single traditional clothing that we can call characteristic of the whole country. Traditional clothing is usually used in religious ceremonies, weddings, and/or other occasions, but is rarely, if at all, used in everyday life.

This table presents the most famous traditional clothes of the Levantine countries:

Country	Clothes
Traditional Clothing in Syria	 **Syria;** CC BY 2.0
Traditional Clothing in Lebanon	 **Lebanon;** public domain

Country	Clothes
Traditional Clothing in Jordan	 **Jordan**; CC BY-SA 3.0
Traditional Clothing in Palestine	 **Palestine**; CC BY-SA 3.0

Activities

Query 5.6.1

Put the name of the country under the correct flag:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 5.6.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 5.6.3

Put the name of the city in the correct column:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 5.6.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity

You plan to travel with your family to Levant Countries (Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine, and Syria) during summer break. Use Google Earth to show your family the famous cities, and historical landmarks that you would like to visit.

This page titled 5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3: KNOWING EACH OTHERS التعارف “ AL-TA’ARUF”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the five letters: و خ ح ج د ذ with their four different shapes and sounds.
- Introduce yourself to others
- Learn possessive pronouns and present tense.
- Learn about Iraq culture, historical places, traditional food and clothes.

3.1: Letters

3.2: Vocabulary

3.3: Dialogue and Reading

3.4: Possessive Pronouns, and the verb "To Like"

3.5: Culture

This page titled 3: Knowing Each Others التعارف “ Al-ta’aruf” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3.1: Letters

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters of two-way connectors خ , ح , ج and three letters of one-way connectors و , ذ , د in their different shapes.
- Pronounce the letters خ , ح , ج , و , ذ , د with short and long vowels.

The letters

letters in this lesson

Letter Name اسم الحرف	Letter shape شكل الحرف
Jeem	ج
H'aa	ح
Khaa	خ
Daal	د
Thaal	ذ
Waw	و

The two-way connections خ ح ج in four forms

The Letter Jeem ج

Pronunciation of letter ج

The letter ج is pronounced from the middle of the tongue, and what lies opposite to it from the middle of the roof of the mouth. The letter ج is often mispronounced by Arabs and non-Arabs, with a softer sound, like the French “J” as in the word “bonjour.” The letter ج is pronounced in Egyptian dialect as “G” in English. For example, the name “Jamal” is pronounced as “Gamal” in Egyptian. In the Syrian dialect, it is pronounced like the “J” in “Java.” To pronounce ج correctly, you must use the middle of the tongue, and then concentrate on not allowing any sound or air out. (See figure 3.1.1)

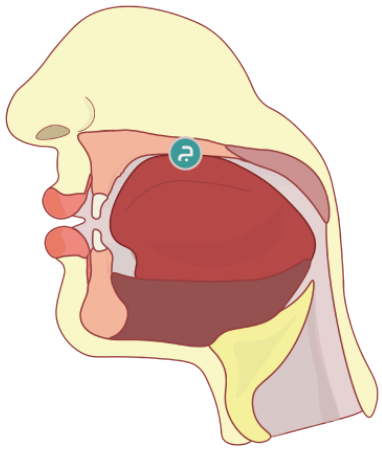


Figure 3.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ج

The tables below show the sound of the letter Jeem with short and long vowels.

The letter ج with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
جْ	جُ	جِ	جَ

The letter ج with long vowel

The letter ج with long vowels

The long vowel “و ” oo	The long vowel “ي” ee	The long vowel “ا” aa
جو	جي	جا

The writing of letter ج

To write the independent ج, begin at a point above the line, make a small hook, draw a line straight across, then change direction and swing down below the line into the tail. Finally, place the dot in the middle, in the “belly” of the letter. However, the writing of letter ج is different in handwriting and print.

To write ج as initial position, begin with the hook, as you did with independent form, then slant down toward the line into a point just above the line. Then, instead of curving down into the tail, continue into connecting segment جـ. Place the dot underneath the hook of the letter.

The medial shape of the letter jeem is like this ـجـ it is the same shape of the jeem when it comes as initial but, it has continuing

line from left and right side so, it can be linked to other letters when it comes in the middle of the word, then the dot goes underneath the hook of the letter.

For the final shape ـجـ draw a connecting segment from the line, then draw upwards and over. The final position has the same tail as the independent position. (Watch the video)

The letter ج in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـج	ـجـ	جـ	ج

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Jeem

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 3.1.1

Which of the following is in the Medial shape.

ـجـ - جـ - ج - ـج

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter H'aa ح

The letter Ha'a ح represents a sound that is pronounced in the middle of the throat. It has no equivalent in English.

The Technical Way for Pronouncing the letter ح. Open your mouth, make a raspy (rough) "*h*" sound. Then, tighten the muscles so that air can just barely squeeze through your throat. You should be able to feel your Adam's apple move. Another hint to help you articulate the letter ح Is to think of the throat squeezing against itself from the middle and try to pronounce it from that point of pressure. There is plenty of air that runs with this letter. You should feel the friction in the middle of your throat. A final method to find the articulation point of the letter ح is to try to cough, place your hand on your throat and feel your throat. That point is the articulation of the letter ح. (See the figure 3.1.2)

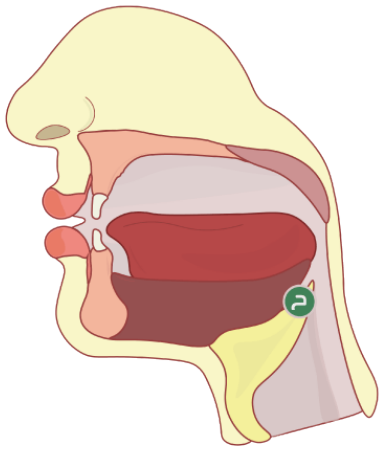


Figure 3.1.2: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ح

The tables below show the sound of the letter H'aa with short and long vowels.

The letter ح with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
حْ	حُ	حِ	حَ

The letter ح with long vowel

The letter ح with long vowels

The long vowel "و " oo	The long vowel "ي" ee	The long vowel "ا" aa
حو	حي	حا

The letter ح is a connecting letter and is written like the letter ح but without the dot. (Watch the video)

The letter ح in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـح	ـحـ	حـ	ح

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter H'aa

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 3.1.2

The name of the vowel on the letter خَ is.

Kasra / Fataha / Dhama / Sukoon

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Khaa خ

To pronounce the letter خ, say "*kh*" and pay attention to where the back of your tongue hits the back of the roof of your mouth and cuts off the air flow. Instead of closing off the air flow with the back of your tongue completely, block it partially and you will be able to produce the sound. The articulation point of the letter خ is at the closest part of the throat (the beginning of the throat), or the closest to the mouth. (See figure 3.1.3)

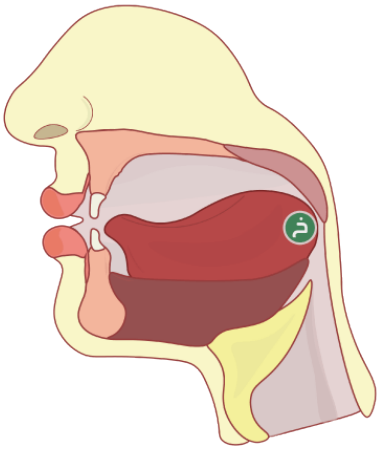


Figure 3.1.3: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter خ

The tables below show the sound of the letter Khaa with short and long vowels.

The letter خ with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
خْ	خُ	خِ	خَ

The letter خ with long vowel

The letter خ with long vowels

The long vowel “و ” oo	The long vowel “ي” ee	The long vowel “ا” aa
خو	خي	خا

The letter خ is a connecting letter, and it is written like the letter ج and ح, but the dot is placed above the letter. (Watch the video)

The letter خ in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـخ	ـخـ	خـ	خ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Khaa

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 3.1.3

The long vowel و oo with the letter Khaa it gives the sound of.

خا / خو / خي

Answer available at the end of this section.

The one-way connections و ذ د in shapes forms.

The Letter Daal د

This letter is pronounced like a clear, frontal “d” in English, as in the word “deep” and not like the “d” sound in the word “puddle”. The articulation point of the letter د is the tongue, and the pronunciation of the letter is from the top side of the tip of the tongue and the gum line of the two front upper incisors. The common mistake in the pronunciation of the letter د is placing the tongue further back in the mouth, like English “d”. (See figure 3.1.4)

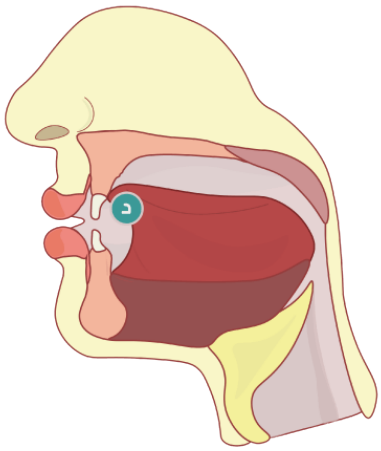


Figure 3.1.4: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter د

The tables below show the sound of the letter Daal with short and long vowels.

The letter د with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
دْ	دُ	دِ	دَ

The letter د with long vowel

The letter د with long vowels

The long vowel “و ” oo	The long vowel ‘’ي” ee	The long vowel “ا” aa
دو	دي	دا

This letter does not connect to any letter that follows it “left side”, which means it has only one connector on the right side.

Therefore, to write the initial د, begin above the line and slant down, and just before reaching the line, angle sharply and finish along the line. It is essential to keep the curve of the body of this letter less than 90 degrees and above the line.

When writing د in the medial and final positions, begin from the connecting segment and draw the top half of the letter, then trace your line back down, make a sharp angel and finish ـد (Watch the video)

The letter د in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـد	ـد	د	د

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Daal

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 3.1.4

The shape of د is in.

Final shape / Initial shape

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Thaal ذ

The letter ذ represents the other sound of “th” like the sound of “the” in the word “other”. The articulation place of the letter ذ is the bottom tip of the tongue and the top edge of the two front lower incisors, and the top tip of the tongue and the bottom edges of the two front upper incisors.

There is a small space left between the tip of the tongue and the plates of the teeth when the pronouncing the letter ذ. The letter ذ is many times mispronounced as a plain “z”. The solution to mispronunciation is again using the top of the tip of the tongue and the bottom edges of the two front teeth (incisors). There should be enough protrusion of the tongue tip so that it is visible to the observer. (See figure 3.1.5)

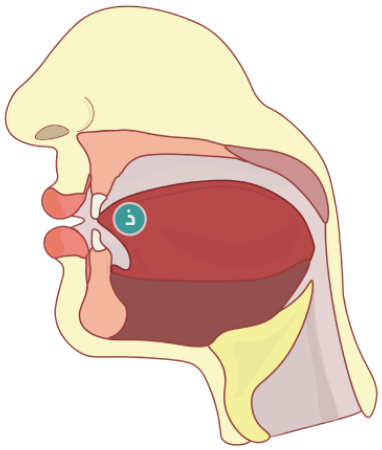


Figure 3.1.5: CCross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ذ

The tables below show the sound of the letter Thaal with short and long vowels.

The letter ذ with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
ذْ	ذُ	ذِ	ذَ

The letter ذ with long vowel

The letter ذ with long vowels

The long vowel "و " oo	The long vowel "ي'' ee	The long vowel "ا" aa
ذو	ذي	ذا

To write the letter ذ it is the same way you write the letter د, but a dot is placed above the letter. (Watch the video)

The letter ذ in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـذ	ـذ	ذ	ذ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Thaal

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 3.1.5

True or Falls

The letter ئ can go under line when we write it .

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Waw و

The letter Waw و has two functions like the letter Yaa ي. The first function is as the long vowel و. The second function is as a consonant. The consonant و can be preceded or followed by a long vowel, or it can or carry a short vowel. It is pronounced “w” as in well, howl, or “wh” in what, why, whale.

The articulation point of the letter waw “و” is the two lips, and it is articulated by forming a circle with both lips without them meeting completely, and pointing the lips to the front. (See figure 3.1.6)

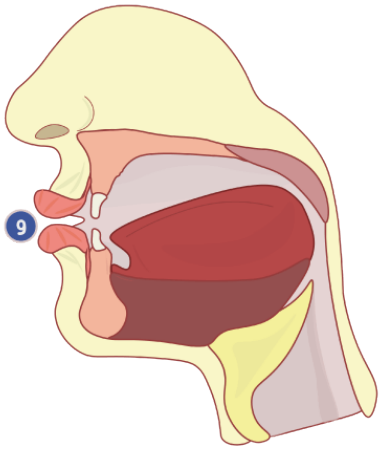


Figure 3.1.6: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter و

The tables below show the sound of the letter Waw with short and long vowels.

The letter و with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
وْ	وُ	وِ	وَ

The letter و with long vowels

The letter و with long vowels

The long vowel “و ” oo	The long vowel “ي” ee	The long vowel “ا” aa
وو	وي	وا

The letter و is only connects from one side – the preceding letter – if the preceding letter also has a connector. To write the independent و, begin on the line, make a loop, move clockwise and upwards to the left, and then swing down into the tail, which should dip well below the line.

When writing و in the medial and final positions, begin from the connecting segment and draw a circle of the letter و above the line, and extend the line of و under the line with making a simple curve. (Watch the video)

The letter و in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـو	ـو	و	و

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Waw

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 3.1.6

The ي with the letter Wow وي is

Long vowel / Short vowel

Answer available at the end of this section.

Activity 1

Write the name of the letter in English.

Query 3.1.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 2

Write the letters و ذ د خ ح ج in three forms with short vowels, following the format. You can check your answer from the explanation above under each letter.

- Initial shape with Dhama.
- Medial shape with Fatha.
- Final shape with Kasra.

Activity 3

Choose the correct letter

Query 3.1.8

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.1.9

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.1.10

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.1.11

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.1.12

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 4

Connect the letters to form a word as showing in the example and try to pronounce it as you write.

Example: ذُباب = ب + ا + ب + ذُ

Exercise 3.1.13

= ب + ا + ب

= بّ + حُ

= ي + ت + خ + أُ

= ت + ي + بَ

= ت + و + ت

= ث + ا + ث + أ

= ب + ا + ي + ثِ

= د + خَ

= د + و

= ن + ا + ي

= ر + ا + د

= ب + و + ثَ

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 3.1.1

ـجـ

Exercise 3.1.2

Fataha

Exercise 3.1.3

خو

Exercise 3.1.4

It can be in both shapes

Exercise 3.1.5

Falls.

Exercise 3.1.6

Long vowel

Exercise 3.1.13

باب

حُبّ

أُختي

بَيت

توت

أثاث

ثِياب

خَد

ود

ناي

دار

ثَوب

This page titled 3.1: Letters is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Section 1

Listen, learn, and repeat the vocabulary that are in this table which contain the letters و خ ح ج ذ د In some words you will find a slash then ة "ta'a Marbuta" this indicates the gender. The feminine words end with ة "ta'a Marbuta". You will learn about ة "ta'a Marbuta" in the next chapter. Also, you will find some words that end with ي this ي takes the form of suffix. it is attached to the noun that's owned to indicate the possessive pronoun (my).

Vocabulary

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 foreigner	ajnaby / ajnabya		Foreigner (masc. / fem.)	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 brother	akh		Brother	
 My brother	akhi		My Brother	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 sister	ukht		Sister	
 My sister	ukhti		My Sister	

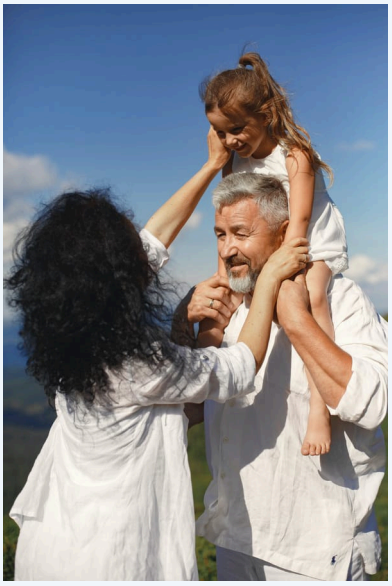
Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 Grandfather	jd / jda		Grandparents (masc. fem.)	
 My grandfather	jdi		My Grandfather	

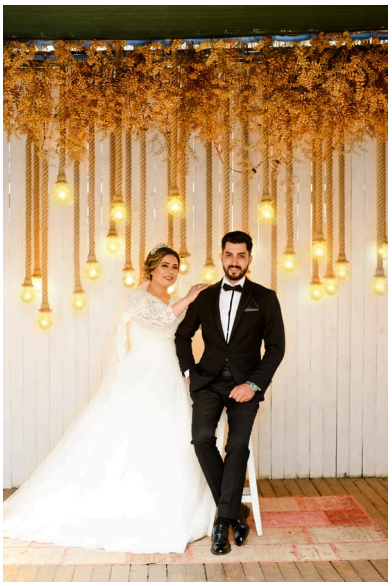
Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 Love	hub		Love	
 Darling/Lover	habib / habiba		Darling or lover (masc. / fem.)	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 My love	habyby / habybty		My love (masc. fem.)	
 New	jadyd/ jadyda		New (masc. / fem.)	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 Neighbor	jar / jara		Neighbor (masc. / fem.)	
 pocket	jayb		Pocket	

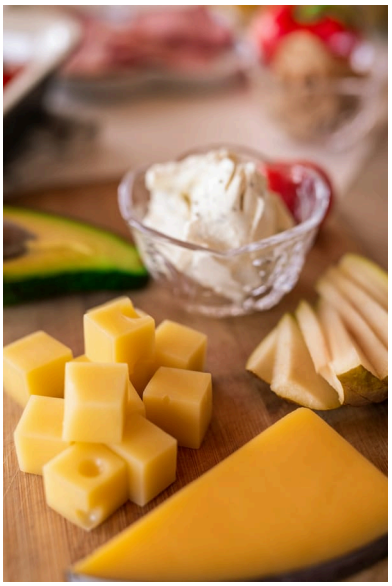
Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 My pocket	jayby		My Pocket	
 cheese	jbn		Cheese	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 peach	khawkh		Peach	
 thumbs up	bikhyr		Fine / Good	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 bear	dub		Bear	
 nightclub	nadi		Club	

Image	Pronunciation	Recorging	Meaning	
 Homework	wajib		Duty Homework Doing the homework	

Activity 1 Listening

Listen to the vocabulary above, try to pronounce each word several times and learn its meaning.

Activity 2 Choosing the right word.

After you Listened to the audio recordings, now listen again and choose the right word.

Query 3.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 3 Find the word from the picture.

Choose the correct word that matches the picture

Query 3.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.2.8

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 4 Vocabulary Crosswords

The words in this grid do not contain short vowels, try to search for them in different directions to find them.

Query 3.2.9

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 3.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Introduce yourself to others, by giving your name and telling where you are from.
- Ask others where they are from.

Acquaintance and dialogue between members of the Arab community is one of the most important means of communication among them. Arabs like to meet new people and have conversations with them whenever they get the chance to meet them, whether at work, college, street, home, etc. The dialogue usually begins with a greeting, the most common and formal greeting is "Asalaamu Alaikum" ("peace be with you"), the response is "wa alaikum salaam" ("and peace be unto you"). And handshake usually comes with a greeting coupled with eye contact and a smile, after which the two-exchange information to get to know each other.

Dialogue 1

In this dialog, the conversation is between two men (Wajdi & Nooh). Wajdi starts the conversation by greeting Noah and asking some questions. In this conversation, you will learn when, and how to use the attached pronouns for first and second-person masculine.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialog 1

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Peace be upon you	alsalam ealaykum	السَّلامُ عَلَيْكُم
And may peace be upon you	w ealaykum alsalam	وعَلَيْكُم السَّلام
How are you?	Kayf haluka?	كَيفَ حالُكَ؟
Good, thank God, and you?	Bikhayr Wal-hamdallah, wa anta?	بِخَيْرٍ والحمدُ لله. وأنتَ؟
Good! My name is wajdi... What's your name?	Bikhayr. 'ana asmi wajdi ... ma asmuka?	بِخَيْرٍ. أنا اسْمِي وجدي ... ما اسمُكَ؟

English	Transliteration	Arabic
My name is Noah	'ana asmi Nooh	أَنا اسْمِي نوح
Where are you from?	min 'ayn 'anta?	مِنْ أَيْن أَنْتَ؟
I'm from California	'ana min wilayat kalifurnia	أَنا مِنْ وِلايَة كاليفورنيا
From what city in California?	Min 'ayi madina min wilayat kalifurnia?	مِنْ أَيّ مَدِيْنَةٍ مِنْ وِلايَة كاليفورنيا؟
I'm from San Diego	'ana min mdynt san diighu	أَنا مِنْ مَدِيْنَةِ سان دييغو
Pleased to meet you	tasharafna	تَشَرَّفْنَا
Pleased to meet you	tasharafna	تَشَرَّفْنَا

Dialogue 2

In this dialog, the conversation is between a man "Waheed" and a woman "Maysaa." Waheed starts the conversation with Maysaa by the greeting, then he asks some questions. In this conversation, you will learn when, and how to use the attached pronouns for first and second person feminine.



Shaking hands

Dialog 2

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Good morning	sabah alkhayr	صَباحُ الخَير

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Good morning	sabah al noor	صَباح النور
How are you?	Kayf haluki?	كَيفَ حالُكِ؟
Good, thank God, and you?	Bikhayr Wal-hamdallah, wa anta?	بِخَيْرٍ، والحمدُ لله. وأنتَ؟
Good! My name is Waheed... What's your name?	Bikhayr, 'ana ismi Wahid ... ma asmuki?	بِخَيْرٍ. أنا اسْمِي وحيد. ما اسمُكِ؟
My name is Maysaa	'ana ismi Maysaa	أَنا اسْمِي ميساء
Where are you from?	min 'ayn 'anti?	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتِ؟
I'm from Iraq	'ana min al-eiraq	أَنا مِنْ العِرَاق
From what city in Iraq?	Min 'ay mdinat min al-eiraq?	مِنْ أَيِّ مَدِيْنَةٍ من العراق ؟
I'm from Baghdad city	'ana min madinat baghdad	أنا من مَدِيْنَةِ بغداد
Nice to meet you	fursa saeida	فُرصَةٌ سَعيدَةٌ
Thank you	shukran	شُكراً

Dialogue 3

In this dialog, the conversation is between a woman “Nadine”, and 3 people from both gender “Dani”, “Hanine” and "Naji". Nadine starts the conversation with by the greeting, then she asks some questions. In this conversation, you will learn when, and how to use the attached pronoun using first, second and third person masculine and feminine.



Meeting new people

Dialog 3

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Hello	Marhaban	مَرْحَباً
Hello	Ahlaan	أَهْلاً
How are you?	Kayfa halukom?	كَيفَ حالُكم؟
Good, thank God	Bikhayr Wal-hamdullah	بِخَيْر والحمدُ لله
My name is Nadine... What's your name?	'ana asmi nadine ... ma asmukum?	أنا اسْمِي نادين ... ما اسمُكُم؟
My name is Dani ...her name is Hanine, and his name is Naji	'ana asmi dani ... heya asmuha hanine ...wa huwa asmuhu naji	أَنا اسْمِي داني ....هي اسْمِها حنين و هو اسْمِه ناجي
Where are you from?	min 'ayn 'antum?	مِنْ أَيْن أَنْتُم؟
We are from Syria	'nhnu min suria	نَحنُ مِنْ سوريا
In which city in Syria?	min ay mdinah fi suria ?	مِنْ أَيِّ مَدِيْنَةٍ في سوريا ؟
I am from the city of Aleppo ....and they are from the city of Damascus	'ana min madinat halaba.... wa hum min madinati dimashq	أنا من مَدِيْنَةِ حَلب.... وهم من مَدِيْنَةِ دِمَشق
Nice to meet you	surertu bimaerifatikum	سُرِرتُ بمعرِفَتَكُم
We, also	wanahnu aydaan	ونَحنُ أيضاً

Activity 1 Introduce yourself.

Introduce yourself to your colleagues, and let them introduce themselves to you. Remember to start with greeting, try to use different greeting each time you introduce yourself. Ask how they are and where they are from make sure to use the right attached pronouns for the second and third person according to gender.

Activity 2 Answer before flipping the card.

Query 3.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 3 replying to greetings or Questions.

Query 3.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity

Search the internet for a famous Arab celebrity. Share this information with your classmate:

- Celebrity name
- Where is the celebrity from?

This page titled 3.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3.4: Possessive Pronouns, and the verb "To Like"

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will learn:

- The eight possessive forms and how to show possession or ownership for each one.
- The present tense verb conjugation for the eight subject pronouns.

Attached pronouns

The nouns الأسْمَاء and verbs الأفْعَال have three categories to classify them. 1st. person (speaker). 2nd. person (spoken to). 3rd. person (spoken about).

In Arabic, the attached pronouns (possessive pronouns) are different than separate pronouns (subjective pronouns). The attached pronouns are suffixes, they become possessive when they connected to a noun. The following table demonstrates the suffixes that relate to each separate pronoun before adding any noun to them.

Table of attached pronouns

Meaning	الضمائر المتصلة / الملكية Attached pronouns/ "Possessive Pronouns"	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ English	Gender & Number of people
My	ي----------	أنا	I	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
Our	نَا----------	نحنُ	We	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
Your	كَ----------	أَنْتَ	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Your	كِ----------	أَنْتِ	You	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Your	كُم----------	أَنْتُم	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
His	هُ----------	هو	He	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular

Meaning	الضمائر المتصلة / الملكية Attached pronouns/ "Possessive Pronouns"	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ English	Gender & Number of people
Her	ـها----------	هي	She	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Their	ـهم----------	هم	They	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Example of changing the noun to possessive pronouns using the noun House (بَيْت) for all the different subject pronouns.

Meaning and Pronunciation	الضمائر الملكية The Possessive Pronouns	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	Gender & Number of people
My house / bayty	بَيْتي	أنا	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
Our house / baytuna	بَيْتُنا	نحنُ	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
Your house / baytukum	بَيْتُكَ	أَنْتَ	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Your house / baytuki	بَيْتُكِ	أَنْتِ	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Your house / baytukum	بَيْتُكم	أَنْتُم	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
His house / baytuhu	بَيْتُهُ	هو	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Her house / baytuha	بَيْتُها	هي	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Their house / baytuhum	بَيْتُهُمْ	هم	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Watch this video to learn more about the possessive pronouns in Arabic:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Activity 1 changing the word "name" اسم to possessive.

Query 3.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 2 practice by yourself or with others.

Use the 1st chart above to practice by yourself to change the word "sister" (أُخت) into possessive by adding the suffixes letters to it. Try to read the word after making changes. Repeat this exercise several times using different nouns like "grandfather" (جَدّ), "homework" (واجب), or any other noun.

Example 3.4.1

= أُخت + ي (Sister)

Solution

أُختي (My sister)

Activity 2 Pronouns and Possessive Forms.

Query 3.4.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.4.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.4.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.4.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Interactive Video

Watch this interactive video, you can practice while watching when you click on the hand. The video will pause when you click on the hand.

Query 3.4.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Present tense verb conjugation.

The verbs الأَفْعَال like nouns أَسْمَاء have three categories to classify them as we mentioned in chapter 3 . 1st. person (speaker). 2nd. person (spoken to). 3rd. person (spoken about). The following chart shows the appropriate suffix/prefix for basic verb to conjugated in the present tense for all the different subject pronouns.

Table for verb conjugation in present tense

تصريف الفعل المضارع (Present tense verb conjugation)	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ English	Gender & Number of people
أَ----------	أنا	I	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
نَ----------	نحنُ	We	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
تَ----------	أَنْتَ	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
تَ-------يـن	أَنْتِ	You	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
تَ-------ون	أَنْتُم	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
يَ--------	هو	He	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
تَ----------	هي	She	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
يَ--------ون	هم	They	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Example of Conjugating the verb to love/ to like (حَبَّ) in present tense for all the different subject pronouns.

Meaning and Pronunciation	Suffix/Prefix for conjugating basic verb in present tense	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	Gender & Number of people
I love / Auheb	أُحبُّ	أنا	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
We love / nuheb	نُحبُّ	نحنُ	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
You love / tuheb	تُحبُّ	أَنْتَ	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
You love / tuhebin	تُحبَّين	أَنْتِ	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
You love / tuhebon	تُحبَّون	أَنْتُم	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
He loves / yuheb	يُحبُّ	هُوَ	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
She loves / tuheb	تُحبُّ	هِي	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
They loves / yuhebon	يُحبُّون	هُم	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Activity 1 Flashcards.

Conjugating the verb to love/ to like (حَبَّ) Think of the answer and say the word before flipping the card.

Query 3.4.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 2 Dragging the word.

Verb Conjugation "to study" (دَرَسَ) in the present.

Query 3.4.8

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 3 handwriting activity.

Practice to Conjugate the verb to study (سَكَنَ) in the present tense for all the different subject pronouns, and try to read the word after each conjugating. Check your work from the charts above.

Example 3.4.2

سكَن + أ = (to live)

Solution

أسكُن (I live)

This page titled 3.4: Possessive Pronouns, and the verb "To Like" is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

3.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about Iraq, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

Iraq

- Official Name: Republic of Iraq - جمهورية العراق
- Capital: Baghdad - بغداد
- Population: 42,100,744 - (2022)
- Currency: The dinar
- Continent: Asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة

Watch this movie about Iraq and learn about ancient Mesopotamia.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Geographical location and flag

Iraq is located in Western Asia. It is bordered by Turkey to the north, Saudi Arabia to the south, Iran to the east, the Arabian Gulf, Kuwait to the southeast, Syria to the west, and Jordan to the southwest. The climate of Iraq has mild winters and hot summers. The country's mountainous regions, however, have very cold winters and mild summers.



Figure 3.5.1: Iraq's location among neighboring countries (public domain via Wikimeida commons)

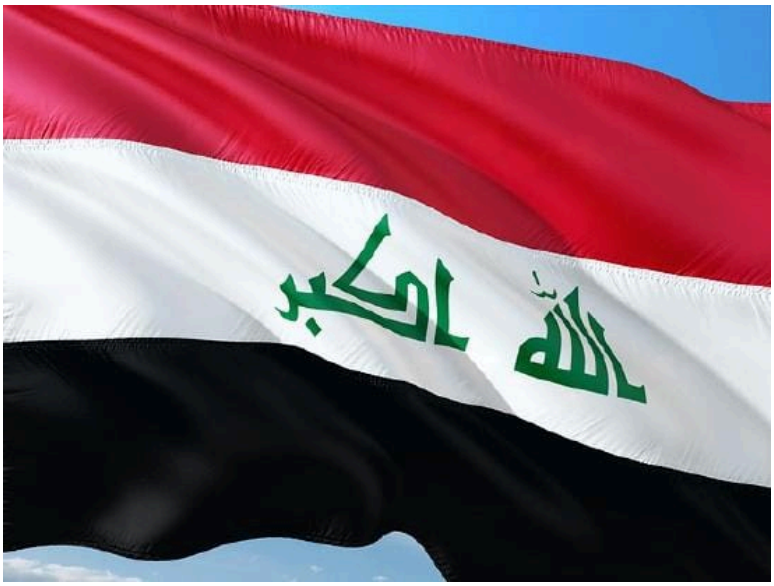


Figure 3.5.2: Iraq flag; pixabay license

Most Famous Historical Places in Iraq

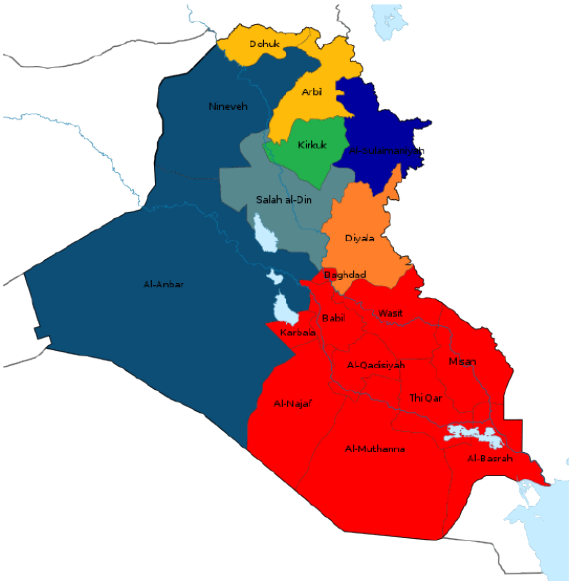
Iraq is known as Mesopotamia because its land lies between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. It is considered one of the most prominent countries rich in natural resources, so ancient civilizations flourished in that region to become home to the oldest civilizations in the world. Today, Iraq is famous for its ancient history and its archeological sites, which were established thousands of years BC. One of the most famous archeological places in Iraq are: Ziggurat of Ur زقورة أور , Babylon بابل , Samarra ملوية سامراء , Hatra الحضر, Taq Kasra طاق كسرى , Rabban Hormizd Monastery دير الربان هرمزد , Erbil Citadel قلعة أربيل. Watch the videos of the three historical and ancient places in Iraq.

Historical Place	Video
 Ziggurat of Ur; CC BY-SA 4.0	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
 Babylon Gate; CC BY-SA 4.0	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Historical Place	Video
 Mosque of Samarra; pexels license	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Famous Cities in Iraq

Iraq is divided into 18 governorates, and these governorates are divided into districts, and the number of districts is 120, and this district divided into other, less important divisions called nahiyas. Baghdad is the capital of Iraq and the most populous. The most famous cities in Iraq after Baghdad are Mosul, Basra, Babylon, Erbil, Duhok, Sulaymaniyah, Karbala, Kirkuk, and Najaf.



Cities of Iraqi; CC BY-SA 3.0

Famous Cities in Iraq

City Name	Image	Details
Baghdad / بغداد	 Baghdad; public domain	Baghdad is a city on a somewhat fla land. It is the largest city in Iraq and is the second-largest city in the Arab wor after Cairo, and also the second-largest city in West Asia after Tehran. Baghdad is located alon the Tigris River, and is the intellectual, cultural, and commercial center.
Basra / بصرة	 Basra; CC BY-SA 2.5	Basra is located near the border between Irac and Kuwait, and along th Shatt al-Arab River, it is th second-largest city in Iraq, and is the main por in Iraq. The main agricultural area produce corn, rice, wheat, and dates, with livestock.

City Name	Image	Details
Mosul / الموصل	 Mosul; public domain	One of the most important cities in Iraq is located on the western bank of the Tigris River. is the second largest city in Iraq in terms of population and area after the capital Baghdad. It has a large number of Christians. Mosul is located on th trade routes, and Mosul is center for regional and international trade. It is famous for exporting grain, manufacturin cotton threads, weaving, and trading in sheepskin ar wool.

City Name	Image	Details
Erbil / أربيل	 Erbil Citadel; CC BY-SA 4.0	Erbil is one o the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world. The Kurds are currently the largest ethni group in the city. In the center of the city is the Erbil Citadel an ancient fortress dati back to 200 BC. Erbil is famous for it modern centers and archaeologic sites.

Traditional Iraqi Food and Clothes

Food

Iraqi cuisine is considered one of the famous, rich and upscale kitchens. Iraqis appreciate their kitchen very much. They use expensive meat in their meals from sheep, beef, chicken, and fish. The most common foods in Iraq are: Masgouf (pronounced mezguuf), is a national Iraq dish, Fresh carp marinated on skewers and cooked over charcoal in an outdoor grill. Kebab, which is grilled meat on skewers.. Kebab, which is grilled meat on a stick or on a flat metal like a ruler. Biryani, cooked rice with spices, meat (sheep, beef, or chicken) sometimes they mix meats together, vegetables and grilled nuts. Dolma, spiced rice with meat (sheep or beef) wrapped “stuffed” in grape leaves. Falafel, It is a deep-fried ball made from ground chickpeas served wrapped in a flatbread called pita or samoon with salads, pickled vegetables, mango sauce or tahini sauces. Shawarma, traditionally made with lamb meat cut into thin slices seasoned, stacked in a cone-like shape, and roasted on a slowly-turning vertical rotisserie. served wrapped with pita bread or samoon with salads, pickled vegetables, and tahini sauces Etc. Watch the video.

Name of the food in Arabic	Image
سمك مسكوف	 Masgouf; CC BY-SA 4.0
دولمة	 Dolma

Name of the food in Arabic	Image
برياني	 Biryani; pexels license
كباب	 Kabab

Name of the food in Arabic	Image
فلافل	 Falafel; pexels license

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Clothes

Iraq is one of the most multicultural societies in the Middle East. A broad diversity of religions, races, and cultures flourished in Iraq, united by common heritage, culture, and traditions. As for the traditional costumes, they vary according to race and religion. There are Arab, Assyrian, Kurdish, Armenian, Sabean, Yezidi, Turkmen, etc. costumes. Traditional costumes still exist to this day, and costumes in Iraqi society vary according to occasions. Holidays have a certain costume, religious rites have a certain costume, and ordinary days have another.

Arab dress. Sumerian roots

It consists of an abaya that a man wears over the dishdasha (the dishdasha is an ankle-length robe, with long sleeves and without embroidery). The abaya is usually embroidered with golden threads or colors that differ from the color of the abaya. As for the elderly women, they wear the black abaya on a long dress of one dark color most of the time, and for young women, they wear the Hashemite uniform in bright colors.

Christian fashion

It reflects the depth of their history in Mesopotamia and its origins from Babylon and Assyria The Syriac and Assyrian costume is characterized by simplicity in design and strong colors in which geometric shapes, flowers, or stars are inserted, and it is called the ornamental costume. Same thing with women costumes, they are colorful costumes with many pieces of accessories similar

to the accessories that were worn by queens in Mesopotamia.

Kurdish fashion

It reflects the nature of the mountains and hills and has its own cultural and social features The Kurdish men's costume consists of two pieces and one color: the jacket and the trousers, and they are loose, and a cloth wrapped around the middle as a belt, and a head is covering with a cloth that is wrapped around over head. As for women's fashion, it is characterized by its luster, luster and stark colors. It is a long dishdasha that covers mostly the soles of the feet and is embroidered and has long sleeves linked to two long conical tails and wears a thin and silky undershirt under it.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Activities

Query 3.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 3.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity

You plan to travel with your family to Mesopotamia (Iraq) during summer break. Use Google Earth to show your family the famous cities, and historical landmarks that you would like to visit.

This page titled 3.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

4: THE FAMILY الأسرة “ AL USRAH”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Identify the Arabic letters (التاء المربوطة) ة ض ص ش س ز ر , their names, shapes.
- Pronounce and write the new letters with short vowels, and long vowels.
- Learn new vocabulary about the family.
- Use the demonstrative pronouns هذه - هذا in introducing your family members
- Learn about the Arab countries of the Gulf culture, historical places, traditional food and clothes

4.1: Letters

4.2: Vocabulary

4.3: Dialogue and Reading

4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا, Taa Marbuta ة

4.5: Culture

This page titled 4: The Family الأسرة “ Al Usrah” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

- 1: An Overview of Arabic by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.1: Letters

`Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters (التاء المربوطة) ة ض ص ش س ز ر in their different shapes.
- Pronounce the letters with (التاء المربوطة) ة ض ص ش س ز ر short and long vowels.

The letters

This table shows the letters discussed on this page and includes an audio recordings of each letter's pronounciation

Letters on this page

Letter Name اسم الحرف	Letter shape شكل الحرف	Audio Recording
Raa	ر	
Zai	ز	
Seen	س	
Sheen	ش	
Saad	ص	
Daad	ض	

The Letter Raa ر

In this section you will learn how to pronounce these 6 Arabic letters ض ص ش س ز ر and their articulation with their short and long vowels

Pronunciation of The Letter Raa ر

The letter “ر” is emitted from the tip of the tongue and what lies opposite to it of the gums of the two front top incisors (the plate). The tip with the top of the tongue needs

to strike the gum to produce this sound correctly. The letters NOON and RAA “ر” come from the same articulation point, but the only difference is that the RAA “ر” uses the tip of the line and does not touch it. There is a small gap between the tongue and the gum and vibrate (trilling) for Raa “ر” pronunciation. The main character of the RAA “ر” is that swing between “Tafkheem” and “Tarqeek”. “Tafkheem” is the opposite of “Tarqeek”. Raa “ر” depends on the short vowel that precedes it; if the short vowel is fathah or dhamah, then the letter Raa’s pronunciation will be stronger (Tafkheem). If the short vowel is kasrah, then the letter Raa’s “ر” pronunciation will be weaker (Tarqeek). (See Figure 4.1.1)

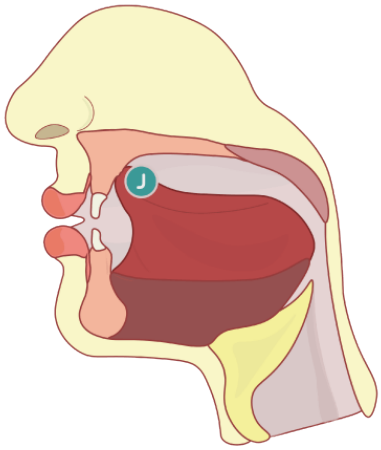


Figure 4.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ر

The Letter ر with the short vowels and sukun

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
رْ	رُ	رِ	رَ

The letter with the long vowels

The letter with the long vowel "و" oo	The letter with the long vowel "ي" ee	The letter with the long vowel "ا" aa
رو	ري	را

Exercise 4.1.1

Find the letter Raa "ر " with the fatha

رُ - رِ - ر - رَ - رُ - را - ري - رو

Answer available at the end of this section.

Writing Letter ر

This letter "ر" is a non-connector. It has only one connector like the letters "و", "ذ", "د"", and "ا". The Raa "ر" is written almost entirely below the line. To write the initial "ر" begin on the line and curve downward below it. The letter "ر" looks like the shape of a crescent moon or a banana. To write a "ر" that is connected from a preceding letter, start from the connecting segment on the line, and then curve down.

Writing Letter ر

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ر/ـر	ـر	ر	ر

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter "Raa" ر

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Letter Zai ز

This letter corresponds to the English sound “*z*” as in the word “zebra”.

The articulation place of the letter “**ز**” is the tongue and the top edge of the two frontal lower incisors. There is a little space left in between the tip of the tongue and the plates of the teeth when pronouncing this letter. In other words, the tip of the tongue just misses the edge of the top and lower teeth. When this letter is emitted, a light whistle-like sound should be heard accompanying the sound, which is called in Arabic “Safeer, صفير”. The most common mistake when pronouncing this letter is pressing the tongue up against the plates of the teeth causing the sound to be suppressed when attempting to say the letter. (see Figure 4.1.2).

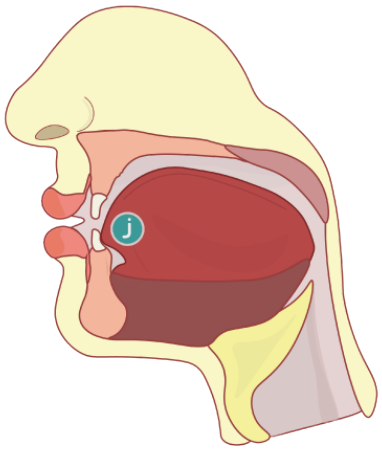


Figure 4.1.2: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ز

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
زْ	زُ	زِ	زَ

The letter with the long vowels

The letter with the long vowel "و" oo	The letter with the long vowel "ي" ee	The letter with the long vowel "ا" aa
زو	زي	زا

Exercise 4.1.2

Highlight the letter Zai " ز" in the following words:

- خبز - زار - أرز - زينة - حزب -

Answer available at the end of this section.

Writing Letter ز

You write the letters "ز" in the same way you write the letter "ر." The only difference is the letter "ز" has a dot above it. (Watch the video)

Writing Letter ز

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـز / ز	ـز	ز	ز

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Zay

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Letter Seen س

The letter “Seen” “**س**” is the name of the Arabic letter that corresponds to English “*s*”, as in the word seen itself. However, remember that English “*s*” is often pronounced as “z”, such as in “easy” and “optimism”, and in many plurals like “dogs”.

Arabic “**س**”, on the other hand, always retains the soft “*s*” sound. “**س**” is a frontal consonant, which means that surrounding vowels take a frontal quality, especially Alif (the long vowel), and fathah, which sound like the “*e*” in bet.

The articulation point of the letter “**س**” is the tongue and the tip top edge of the two frontal low incisors. There is a space left in between the tip of the tongue and the plates of the teeth when pronouncing this letter. A whistle-like sound should accompany its pronunciation. (See Figure 4.1.3)

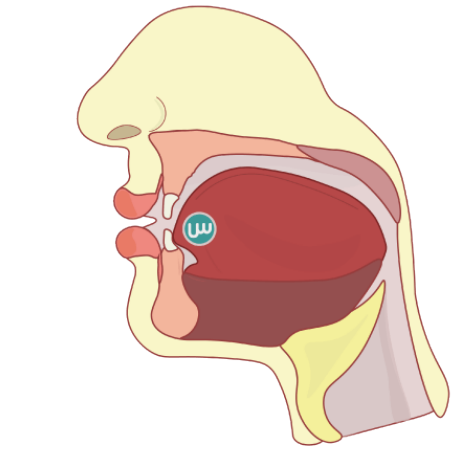


Figure 4.1.3: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter س

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
سْ	سُ	سِ	سَ

The letter with the long vowels

The letter with the long vowel "و" oo	The letter with the long vowel "ي" ee	The letter with the long vowel "ا" aa
سو	سي	سا

Exercise 4.1.3

Find the long vowels of the letter Seen "س" in the following words:

سيَّارة - سارَ - حساب - أسير- خَس - أسْوَد

Answer available at the end of this section.

Writing Letter س

The letter "س" is a connecting letter distinguished in print by its three teeth. In handwriting, the letter "س" is often written without its teeth (as straight line). To write

the independent "س", begin on the line and draw a tiny hook and three teeth (like a toothbrush) then dip below the line into the tail, almost like a semicircle. In the beginning of the word, "ســـ" is written like independent "س", but without the tail - the segment should be longer to distinguish the letter.

When "س" is connected to a preceding letter, the connecting segment and the body of the letter are indistinguishable, and there is no hook in the beginning. This means that the connecting segment and the letter should form a line like this "ـســـ". The body should be long enough to distinguish it from a connecting segment.

The final "ـــس" is written with a tail, which must come all the way back up to the line. (Watch the video)

Writing Letter س

Independent Form	Independent Form	Independent Form	Independent Form
ـس	ـس	ـس	ـس

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Seen

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Letter Sheen ش

The letter “ش” articulation point is the middle of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth of the hard palate – similar to the letter “ج” and the

consonant “ي,” but it has specific characteristics. The letter “ش” is similar to the English sound “*sh*” in the words “should, shall, she”. (see Figure 4.1.4)

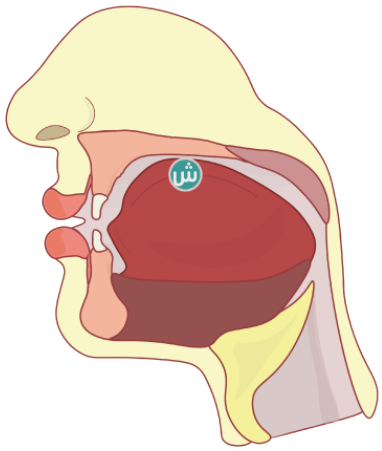


Figure 4.1.4: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter " ش"

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
شْ	شُ	شِ	شَ

The letter with the long vowels

The letter with the long vowel "و" oo	The letter with the long vowel "ي" ee	The letter with the long vowel "ا" aa
شو	شي	شا

Exercise 4.1.4

Find the long vowels of the letter Sheen ش

شَ - شو - شُ - شِ - شا - شي available at the end of this section.

Writing Letter ش

You write the letter Sheen "ش" in the same way you write the letter Seen "س", but with the addition of three dots over the three teeth. The three dots are connected in

handwriting and take the shape of the overturned letter "*v*". (Watch the video)

Writing Letter ش

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـش	ـشـ	شـ	ش

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Sheen

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Letter Saad ص

The articulation place of the letter “Saad” “**ص**” is the same as the letter “**س**” from the tip of the tongue and the top edge of the two front lower incisors. However, this letter represents the emphatic counterpart of “**س**”. Pronounce “**س**” out loud and note the position of your tongue. It should be toward the front and close to the roof of the mouth. Now, starting at the back of your teeth, move your tongue back along the roof of your mouth. You will find a bony ridge just behind the teeth, before the upward curve of the roof of your mouth; place your

tongue against this ridge. The rest of tongue will drop lower inside your mouth to gather air. The emphatic consonants in Arabic are pronounced by placing the end of the tongue in this spot and dropping the rest of the tongue as low as you can. (see Figure 4.1.5).

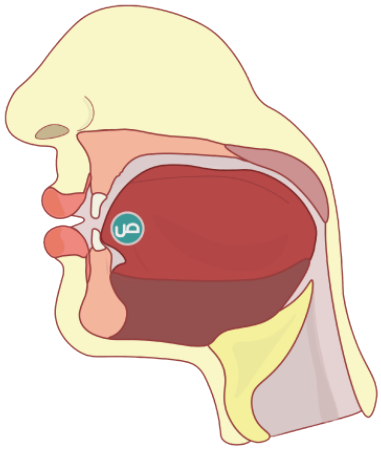


Figure 4.1.5: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ص

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
صْ	صُ	صِ	صَ

The letter with the long vowels

The letter with the long vowel "و" oo	The letter with the long vowel "ي" ee	The letter with the long vowel "ا" aa
صو	صي	صا

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Saad

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 4.1.5

Which of the following is the Arabic letter "ص"

Seen - Sheen - Saad - Zai - Raa

Answer. available at the end of this section.

Writing Letter ص

The letter “ص” is a connector letter and retains the same basic shape in both print and handwriting. There are two essential points to keep in mind when writing “ص”. First, the loop must be large and oval-shaped. Secondly, there should be a small tooth after the loop.

To write the independent “ص”, start on the line and make a big loop up and back to your right, then swing down and close it. Without stopping, make the tooth, then drop well below the line to make the tail. The tail of “ص” is the same shape of the tail of “س” and must come all the way back up to the line.

The letter in the beginning of the word, “صـ”, is written in the same way, but without the tail. After making the tooth, continue to the connecting segment. To write the middle “ـصـ” connected from a previous letter, draw the connecting segment to the starting point of the loop, the same point at which you started in the initial position, and then follow the same steps. At the end of the word, “ـص” is connected in the same way as the medial “ـصـ” and ends with a tail.

Writing Letter ص

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـص	ـصـ	صـ	ص

The Letter Daad ض

The letter Daad "ض" is articulated from the one or both sides of the tongue and from the molars and the gum area next to the molars. This letter can be articulated from one side (right or left) of the tongue alone, or from both sides of the tongue simultaneously, which is more difficult. "ض" has the characteristic of compression of the sound, as well as tafkheem (elevated/heaviness), so the deep part of the tongue raises when pronouncing it and compresses the sound at the same time. The "ض" represents the emphatic counterpart of "د". To pronounce "ض", place your your tongue in the same position as you did to say "ص" and "د", and the result will be "ض". (see Figure 4.1.6)

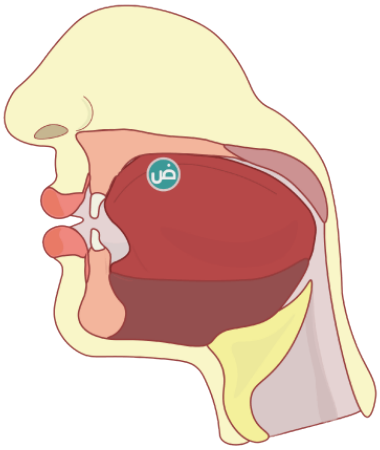


Figure 4.1.6: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ض

The letter ض with the short vowels and sukun

You will listen to the sound of the letter ض with the short vowels

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
ضْ	ضُ	ضِ	ضَ

The letter with the long vowels

The letter with the long vowel "و" oo	The letter with the long vowel "ي" ee	The letter with the long vowel "ا" aa
ضو	ضي	ضا

Exercise 4.1.6

Find the short vowels of the letter Daad ض in the following:

ضُ - ضا - ضي - ضِ - ضْ- ضو - ضَ

Answer available at the end of this section.

Writing Letter ض

You write the letter “ض” in the same way as the letter “ص” and add a dot above the letter. (Watch the video)

Writing Letter ض

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـض	ـضـ	ضـ	ض

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Daad

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Watch the video to learn more about the letters:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 4.1.7:

Query 4.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.1.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.1.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.1.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Exercise 4.1.8:

Trace the letter in the initial, medial, final and independent positions (**remember to write from right to left**):

Trace the letter ر (**remember to read and trace from right to left**)

Independent	Final	Medial	Initial
صورة	جار	خبـر	رنا

Trace the letter ز (**remember to read and trace from right to left**)

Independent	Final	Medial	Initial
أرز	خبـز	حزب	زوج

Trace the letter س (**remember to read and trace from right to left**)

Independent	Final	Medial	Initial
درس	أوتوبيس	حساب	أستاذ

Trace the letter ش (**remember to read and trace from right to left**)

Independent	Final	Medial	Initial
جرش	ريش	بـشـير	شـاي

Trace the letter ص (remember to read and trace from right to left)

Independent	Final	Medial	Initial
باص	شخص	فـصـل	صـباح

Trace the letter ض (remember to read and trace from right to left)

Independent	Final	Medial	Initial
رَضَّ	أبيض	أخضـر	ضـرس

Exercise 4.1.9:

Connect the letters to form the appropriate word. Make sure to write the correct form of the letter. (Remember to write from right to left)

Example:

ض + ر+ س = ضرس

Exercise 4.1.9 – 1

د + ا + ر
ج + ا + ر
خ + ب + ر
ب + ا + ر + د
ر + ب + ا + ب

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.1.9 – 2

خ + ب + ز
ز + و + ج

أ + ر + ز
ز + ي + ت
ح + ز + ب

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.1.9 – 3

أ + س + ت + ا + ذ
أ + د + ر + س
أ + س + ر + + ة
ح + س + ا + ب
س + ي + ا + ر + ة

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.1.9 – 4

ش + ا + ي
ش + ا + ب + ة
ب + ش + ي + ر
ج + ر + ش
ر + ي + ش

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.1.9 – 5

ب + ا + ص
ص + ب + ا + ح
ش + خ + ص
ص + ب + ر

أ + ص + ب + ح

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 4.1.9 – 6

أ + خ + ض + ر
أ + ب + ي + ض
ض + ج + ر
ض + ب + ا + ب
ض + ر + س

Answer available at the end of this section.

Section Three: Listening

Exercise 4.1.10:

In this section you will listen to the sound of the letters with short and long vowels, then write them

Example 4.1.10 – 1

Answers

صُ

ضا

سي

سُ

Answers

Exercise 4.1.1

رَ

Exercise 4.1.2

خبز - زار - أرز - زينة - حزب

سار - حساب - أسير

Exercise 4.1.4

شو - شا - شي

Exercise 4.1.5

Saad

Exercise 4.1.6

ضُ - ضِ - ضَ

Exercise $4.1.9-1$

دار

جار

خبر

بارد

رباب

Exercise $4.1.9-2$

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

خبز

زوج

أرز

زيت

حزب

Exercise $4.1.9-3$

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

أستاذ

أدرس

أسرة

حساب

سيارة

Exercise $4.1.9-4$

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

شاي

شابة

بشير

جرش

ريش

Exercise $4.1.9-5$

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

باص

صباح

شخص

صبر

أصبح

Exercise $4.1.9 - 6$

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

أخضر

أبيض

ضجر

ضباب

ضرس

This page titled 4.1: Letters is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

4.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and say new vocabulary about family members.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

New vocabulary:

Follow the following steps:

1. Look at the pictures below for the new vocabulary
2. Read the meaning
3. Listen to the pronunciation
4. Practice the pronunciation

Read and listen to the new vocabulary

Vocabulary

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Husband	Zawj Zawji	Hu (r My h (r

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Wife	Zawjah Zawjati	Wife My wi
 Son	Ibn Ibni	Son My sc

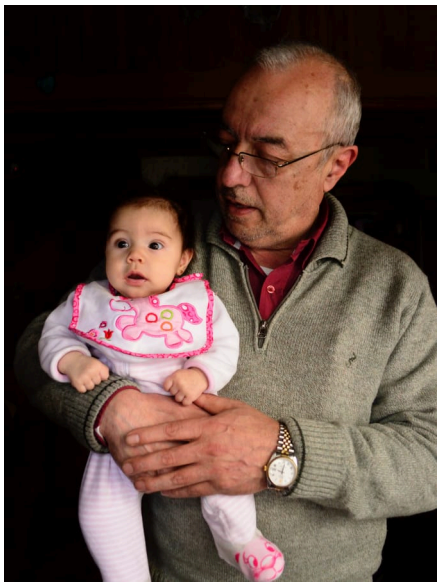
Image	Pronunciation	Me
 source	Ibna Ibnati	Da (r My d (r
 Grandfather	Jadd Jaddi	Grar (r My gra (r

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Grandmother	Jaddah Jaddahti	Gran (r gran (r
 Father	Ab Abi	Fathe My (r

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Mother	Umm Ummi	Moth My (r
 Professor, teacher (male)	Ustaath	Pro teach (r

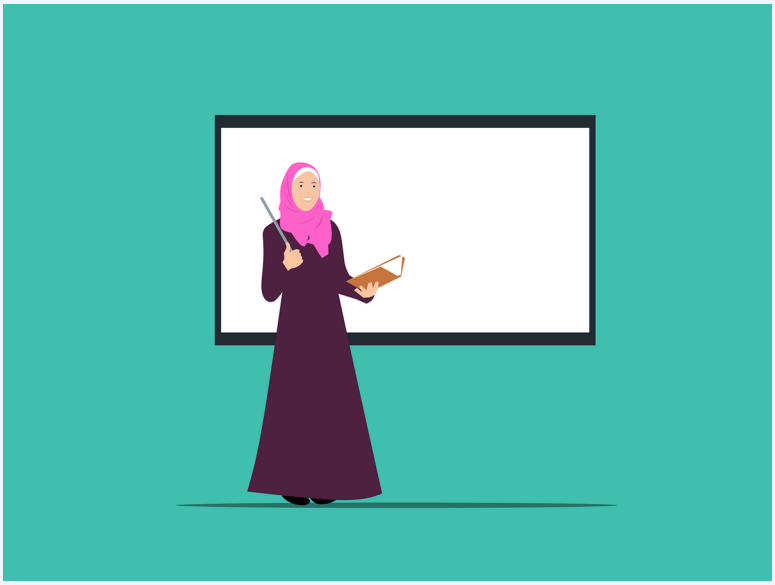
Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Professor, teacher (female)	Usthaatha	Prof tea (fe (n
 Mr.	Sayyid	To int male t (r

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 To introduce a female with no title	Sayyida	To int femal (r
 Young lady, unmarried woman; CC BY 2.0	Aanisa	Refe yo unm wo

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Young man	Shab	You (r
 Young Lady	Shaba	Your (n

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Youths	Shabab	Yo (n
 Family	Usrah	Fa (imm (n

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 (عائلة كرم) CC BY-SA 4.0	Aa'ila	Fa (ext (n
 Black	Aswad	B

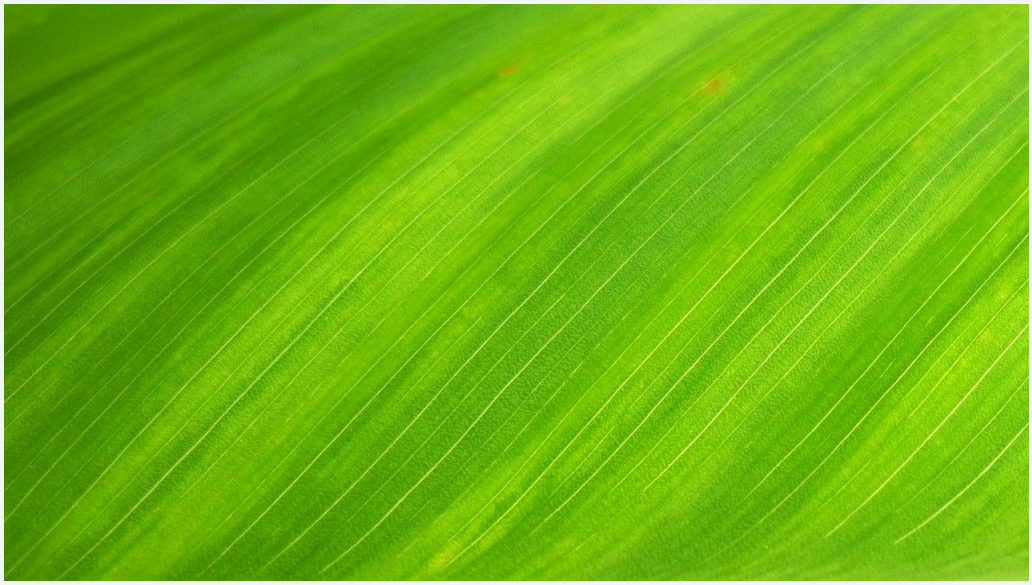
Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Green	Akdar	G
White; CC BY-SA 3.0	Abyad	W

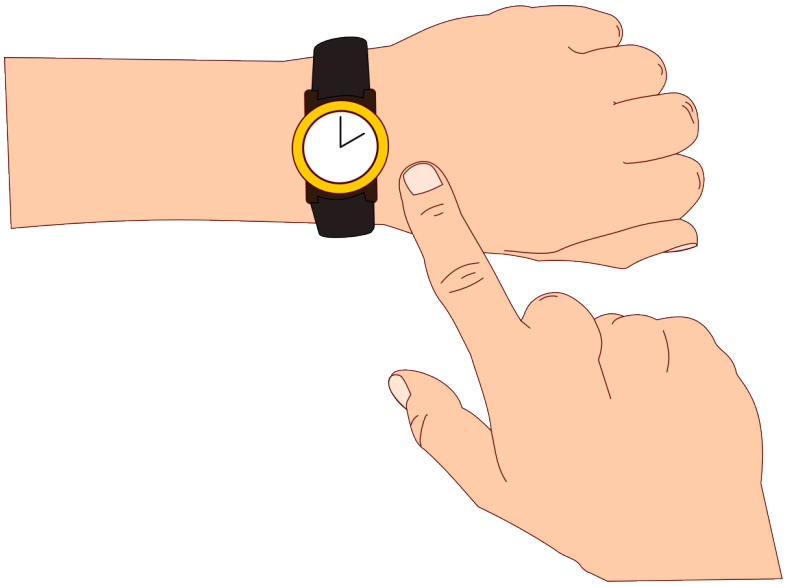
Image	Pronunciation	Me
 This is (for masculine)	Hathaa	This mas
 This is (for feminine)	Hathihi	This fem

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Drink; CC BY-SA 3.0	Sharab	D (n
 Car	Sayyaara	Car

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Rice		Rice
 Syria; CC BY-SA 3.0	Suriyya	Sy n

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Picture		Pictu
 Thank you	Shukran	Tha (n

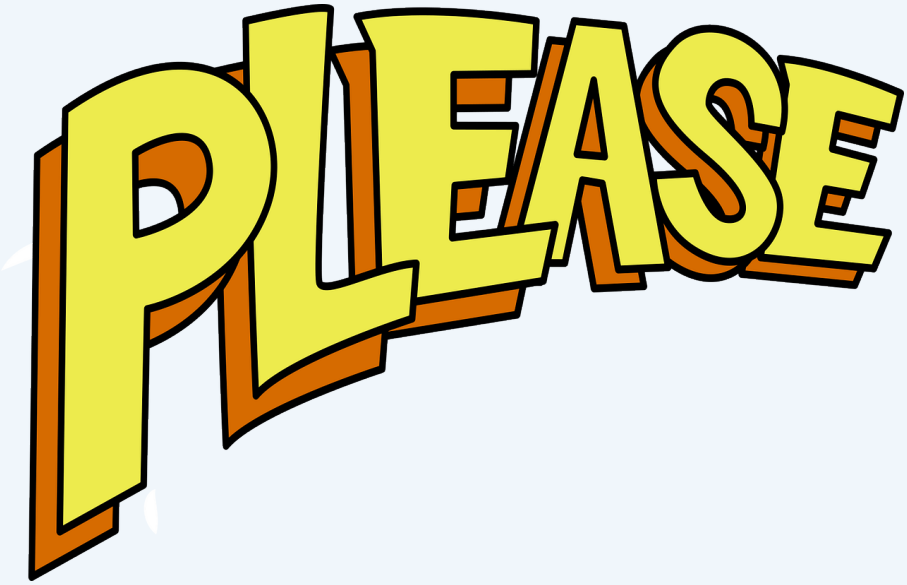
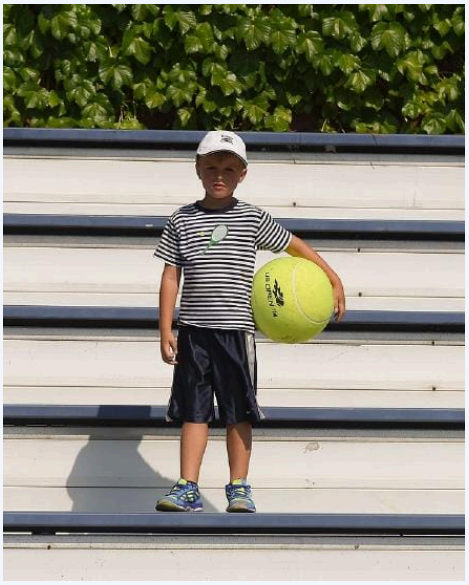
Image	Pronunciation	Me
 Please	Min Fadlak	Pl (ad
 Please come in (for a male)	Tafaddal Tafaddalii	Please (for Please (for a

Image	Pronunciation	Me
 I have; CC BY 2.0	Indi	I
	Laysa indi	I dor

Cognate

cognate

Meaning	Formal / Written
Secretary	سِكْرِتير
Salad	سِلَطَة
Pepsi	بِيْبسِي
Cigarette	سِيجَارة
Cinema	سِينِمَا
Biscuit	بِسْكُويت
Bus	بَاص

Exercise 4.2.1:

Which word that does not belong with the rest of the words in the same line.

The word	1	2	3	4
Line 1	ابنَة	سَيَّارَة	زَوْج	زَوجَة
Line 2	أَب	جَدَّة	صُورَة	جَد
Line 3	أَسْوَد	أَبْيَض	أُسْرَة	أَخْضَر
Line 4	شَاب	أَسْوَد	أُسْتَاذ	سَيِّد

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise: 4.2.2

Query 4.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Exercise: 4.2.3

Query 4.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Answers

Exercise 4.2.1:

سَيَّارَة

صُورَة

أُسْرَة

أُسْتَاذ

This page titled 4.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

4.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer questions about someone's family.
- Talk about your family.

Dialogue #1

Dialogue #1: Listen to the dialogue between Ayat and Salem about the family. Then, practice the dialogue with your partner.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialogue #1

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Salem saw a picture with Ayat		شاهَدَ سالم صُورة مَعَ آيات
Ayat: Peace be upon you	Ayat: Al-Salam Alaykum	آيات: السَّلامُ عَليكُم
Salem: peace be upon you, how are you?	Salem: Wa Alaykum al-Salam, kayfa haluki	سالم: وَعَليكم السَّلام , كَيفَ حالكِ؟
Ayat: I am fine and thank God. And you?	Ayat: Ana bikhayr wa al-hamdulillah. Wa ant?	آيات : أنا بِخَير وَ الحمدُ لله . وَأَنتَ؟
Salem: I'm fine. What's this picture?	Salem: Ana bikhayr. Ma hathihi al sura ?	سالم : أَنا بِخَير. ما هذِهِ الصورة؟
Ayat: This is my family's picture.	Ayat: Hathihi surat usrati	آيات: هذِهِ صورةُ أُسرَتي
Salem: Who is this?	Salem: Man hatha?	سالم: مَن هَذا؟
Ayat: this is my father, his name is Mohsen	Ayat: Hatha abi, ismuho Mohsin	آيات :هَذا أَبي اسمُه مُحسِن
Salem: Who is this?	Salem: Man hathihi?	سالم : مَن هَذِهِ؟
Ayat: This is my mother, her name is Layla.	Ayat: Hathihi ummi, ismuha Layla	آيات : هَذِهِ أُمي اسمُها لَيلى
Salem: Who is this?	Salem: Man hatha?	سالم : مَن هَذا؟

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Ayat: this is my brother his name is Rasool I love my family.	Ayat: Hatha akhi, ismuho Rasool Ana uhibu usrati	آيات : هَذا أَخي اسمُهُ رَسول وأنا أُحبُّ أُسرَتي

Query 4.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Dialog # 2

Listen to the dialog between Sara and Mike in Sara's house. Then, practice the dialog with your classmate.

Dialog #2

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Mike: Good evening, Sara.	Mike: Masa'a al khayr, ya Sara	مايك : مَساءُ الخَير يَا سارة
Sara: Good evening, Mike	Sara: Masa'a al noor, ya Mike	سارة: مَساءُ النّور يا مَايك
Sara: Welcome to my house.	Ahlan wasahlan fi bayti, tafadhal	سارة: أَهلاً وَسَهلاً في بَيتي , تَفَضَّل
Mike:Thank you. What's this picture?	Mike: Shukran. Ma hathihi al-sura?	مايك: شُكراً. مَا هَذِهِ الصورة؟
Sara: This is the family picture.	Sara: Hathihi surat al-a'ailah	سارة: هَذِه صورةُ **العائِلَة**
Mike: Who is this?	Mike: Man hatha?	مايك: مَن هَذا؟
Sara: This is my grandfather. His name is Thabit	Sara: Hatha jaddi, ismuho Thabit	سارة: هَذا جَدي اسمُهُ ثابِت
Mike: Who is this?	Mike: Man hathihi?	مايك : مَن هَذِهِ؟
Sara: This is my grandmother. Her name is Nadia	Sara: Hathihi jaddati, ismuha Nadia	سارة: هَذِهِ جَدَتي اسمُها نادية
Mike: Who is this?	Mike: Man hatha?	مايك: مَن هَذا؟
Sara: This is my father. His name is Jaber.	Sara: Hatha abi. ismuho Jabir	سارة: هَذا أَبي اسمُهُ جَابِر
Mike: Who is this?	Mike: Man hathihi?	مايك : مَن هَذِهِ؟
Sara: This is my mother. Her name is Rana.	Sara: Hathihi ummi. ismuha Rana	سارة:هَذِهِ أُمي اسمُها رَنا
Mike: Who is this?	Mike: Man hatha?	مايك: مَن هَذا؟

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Sara: This is my brother. His name is Noah.	Sara: Hatha akhi, ismuho Nooh	سارة: هَذا أَخي اسمُهُ نُوح
Mike: Where does he study?	Mike: Ayna yadrus?	مايك: أَيْنَ يَدرُّسُ؟
Sara: He is a student at Chaffey College	Sara: Huwa talib fi kulliyat Chaffey	سارة: هو طالِبٌ فِي كُليةِ شيفي
Mike: And who is this?	Mike: Wa man hathihi?	مايك: وَمَنْ هَذه؟
Sara: This is my sister. Her name is Tanya.	Sara: Hathihi ukhti, ismuha Tanya	سارة: هَذِهِ أُختي اسمُها تانيا
Mike: Where does she study?	Mike: Ayna tadrus ?	مايك: أَيْنَ تَدرُّسُ؟
Sara: She's a student at Los Angeles College.	Sara: Wa hia taliba fi kuliyat Los Angeles	مايك : وَهي طَالبةٌ فِي كُليةِ لوس انجولوس
Mike: MashaAllah	Mike: Masha'allah	مايك: مَا شاءَ الله
Sara: Thank you	Sara: Shukran	سارة : شُكرًا
Family (extended)		**العائلة***

Query 4.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.3.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading # 1

Listen to Noor's presentation about her family in Arabic language class. Then practice it with your partner

الأُستَّاذ: مرحباً بِكِ يا نُور, تَفَضّلي

نور: مَرْحَباً بِكُم

أَنا نُور حُسين . أنا مِنْ سوريا. أَسْكُنُ فِي مَدينةِ لوس أنجولوس فِي وِلايةِ كاليفورنيا. أنا طَالبةٌ جَديدةٌ فِي كُليةِ لوس انجولوس . هَذِهِ صُورةُ أُسرَتي . هَذا زَوجي اسمُهُ جابر.وهَذا ابنِي اسمُه نوح ، وهَذِهِ ابنَتي اسمُها دانية . وَعِندي سَيّارة لَونُها أَخْضَر. وَزَوجي عِنْدَهُ سَيّارة لَونُها أَبْيَض .أنا أُحِبُّ أُسْرَتي

شكراً لَكُم

Transliteration

Marhaban biki ya Noor, tafadhali.

Noor: Marhaban bikum.

Ana Noor Hussein. Ana min Suria. Askun fi madinat Los Angeles fi wilayat California. Ana talibah jadida fi kuliyat Los Angeles. Hathihi surat usrati. Hatha zawji, ismuho Jaber, wa hatha ibni, ismuho Nooh', wa hathihi ibnati, ismuha Danya, wa i'ndi sayara, launuha abyadh. Ana uhibo usrati. Shukran lakum.

Meaning in English:

Professor: Hello Noor, Welcome.

Noor: Welcome! I am Noor Hussein. I'm from Syria. I live in Los Angeles city. I'm a new student at Los Angeles College. This is my family's picture. This is my husband named Jaber. And this is my son named Noah, and this is my daughter named Dania. And I have a green car. And my husband has a white car. I love my family. Thank you

Query 4.3.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Presentational Activty

Your new pen pal from Iraq wants to know more about you. Make a video recording introducing yourself and your family to him/her.

This page titled 4.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns - هذا هذه, Taa Marbuta ة

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

1. Use the attached pronoun ي and demonstrative pronouns هذه - هذا in introducing your family members.
2. Learn about Taa Marbouta تاء مربوطة

Grammar Note 1: Possessive Pronoun ي

You already learned in the previous lessons about the possessive pronounce ي when introducing yourself اسمي your age عمري and birthday عيد ميلادي my phone number رقم تلفوني

Listening Excerise 1:

Listen to the following audios

Listening Exercise 1

Audio	Text
	اسمي
	عُمْري
	جَدي
	أَبـي
	أُمي

Grammar Note 2 : Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا

In Arabic, we called the demonstrative pronouns **أَسْماءُ الإشارَة** (asmā' al-ishirāh). In English the demonstrative pronouns are (this, that, these and those). A demonstrative pronouns change according to the gender (male and female) and come in form of (singular, dual, plural).

For example:

هذا (Hatha) is for singular masculine

هذه (Hathihi) is for singular feminine

Listening Exercise 2:

Listen to the following audios

Listening Exercise 2

Audio	Text
	هَذا جَدي
	هَذا أَبي
	هَذا أُسْتاذ
	هَذِهِ جَدتي
	هَذِهِ أُسْتاذة
	هَذِهِ زَوجة

Query 4.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Grammar Note 3 : Taa Marbuta ة

ة "taa marbuta" is a special version of the same letter ت. The word مربوطة *marbuta* means "tied" it is as if the two ends of the تاء مفتوحة have been brought together and tied up on top. ة "taa marbuta" only occurs in nouns, and it is not found in verbs أفعال or particles حروف. It also occurs only at the end of a noun and is not used in the beginning or middle. A word that ends in a ة "taa marbuta" is pronounced with a "هـ" "ha" sound if the speaker stops at the word, and it is pronounced with a "t" sound if the speaker connects the word to the following word. As in many other languages, any Arabic noun/adjective has to be either masculine or feminine. With few exceptions, the general rule is to suffix the taa marbuta (ة/ـة) to the masculine noun/adjective forms to derive the feminine ones. Note that some male names also end in a ة "taa marbuta" and their gender is still male. Sometimes the ة does not make the word female but is used to signify that it is singular. This occurs with words that represent collective plurals. Sometimes the ة is used to intensify the meaning of a word.

This letter is called Taa Marbuuta ة which means the tide ت . Mostly the taa marbutaa indicates the feminine gender. And it

occurs in the final word position with two shapes ـة - ة

Videos

Watch these videos to learn more about "taa Marbuta".

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Listening Exercise 3:

Listen to the following audios

Listening Exercise 3

Audio	Text
	أُسرةٌ
	زَوجةٌ
	أُستاذةٌ
	حَبيبةٌ
	جَدةٌ

This page titled 4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا, Taa Marbuta ة is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

4.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, students will:

- learn about the geographical location and national flags of the Arab countries of the Gulf
- learn about the famous cities, authentic foods, traditional clothing, and famous artifacts in the Arab countries of the Gulf

Arab Countries of the Gulf are:

- Kuwait.
- Bahrain
- Qatar
- The United Arab Emirates.
- Oman.
- Saudi Arabia.

Facts to know about Arab Countries of the Gulf

Kuwait:

- Official Name: State of Kuwait دولة الكويت Dawlat Al-Kuwait
- Capital: Kuwait city
- Population: 4.67 million (2022 estimate)
- Currency: Kuwaiti dinar الدينار الكويتي aldinar alkuwaiti
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

Bahrain:

- Official Name: Kingdom of Bahrainمملكة البحرين Mamlakat Al-Bahrayn
- Capital: Manama
- Population: 1,501,635 (2022 estimate)
- Currency: Bahraini dinar الدينار البحريني aldinar albahrani
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

Qatar:

- Official Name: State of Qatarدولة قطر Dawlat Qatar
- Capital: Doha
- Population: 2,795,484 (2020 estimate)
- Currency: Qatari riyal الريال القطري Qatari riyal
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia

- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

The United Arab Emirates:

- Official Name: United Arab Emirates الإمارات العربية المتحدة Al - Imarat Al--Aranyiah Al- Muttahida
- Capital: Abu Dhabi
- Population: 9,282,410 (2020 estimate)
- Currency: UAE dirham الدرهم الإماراتي dirham alimarati
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

Oman:

- Official Name: Sultanate of Oman *سلطنة عمان Saltanat Uman*
- Capital: Muscat
- Population: 5.107 million (2020 estimate)
- Currency: Omani rial ريال عماني Riyal omani
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

Saudi Arabia:

- Official Name: Kingdom of Saudi Arabia المملكة العربية السعودية Al-Mamlakah al-Arabiya as Suudiya
- Capital:Riyadh
- Population: 34,218,000 (2019 estimate)
- Currency: Saudi riyal الريال السعودي riyal saudi
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic



Figure 4.5.1: Arabian Gulf Countries Map by furfur via Wikimedia Commons CC BY-SA 4.0

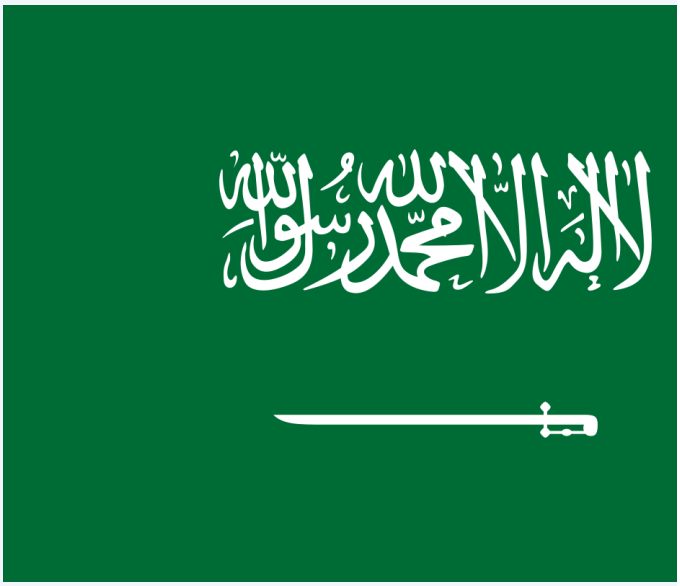
1.1 Arab Countries of the Gulf Capitals and National Flags

This table shows the Arabian Gulf countries and their national flags

Arab Countries of the Gulf

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The Name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	Flag
Kuwait	الكويت	Kuwait	الكويت	 Kuwait
Bahrain	البحرين	Manama	المنامة	 Bahrain

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The Name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	Flag
Qatar	قَطر	Doha	الدوحة	 Qatar
United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة	Abu Dhabi	أبو ظبي	 United Arab Emirates

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The Name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	Flag
Oman	عُمان	Muscat	مسقط	 Oman
Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية	Riyadh	الرياض	 Saudi Arabia

Query 4.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.5.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 4.5.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

1.2 Famous Artifacts

Watch the following videos and learn about the famous artifacts in the Arab countries of the Gulf

Famous artifacts

Country	Video
Qatar	**YouTube Video** *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Country	Video
United Arab Emirates	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Oman	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Kuwait	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Saudi Arabia	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Country	Video
Qatar	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

1.3 Famous Cities:

- Riyadh: is the largest city in Saudi Arabia and its the capital.
- Jeddah: is one of the Saudi Arabia's major resort cities.
- Makkah Almukarramah: is the holiest city in Islam because of the kabaa (house of God) which is the focal point of pilgrimage rituals.
- A-lMadina Al-Munawwarah: is a city in Saudi Arabia. Is the burial site of prophet Mohammad (SWA) Al-Masjid Al-Nabawi.
- Dubai: is a city in United Arab Emirates. Which is known for modernistic architecture and luxury shopping.
- Abu Dhabi: is the capital city of United Arab Emirates.
- Muscat:is the capital of Oman. It is located on Gulf of Oman, and it is surrounded by mountains and desert.
- Salalah: is the third largest city in Oman. There are many gardens within the city where vegetables and fruits grow due to the climate of region.
- Manama:is the capital and largest city in Bahrain.
- Doha: is the capital city of Qatar.
- Kuwait city: is the capital city of Kuwait.

Watch the following videos in this table and learn about the famous cities in the Arab countries of the Gulf.

Famous cities in the Arab countries

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Video
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia	الرياض	Riyadh	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Makkah Almukarramah, Saudi Arabia	مكة المكرمة	Makkah Almukarramah	 Makkah Almukarramah by Najamuddin Shahwani; CC BY 3.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Video
A-lMadina Al-Munawwarah, Saudi Arabia	المدينة المنورة	A-lMadina Al-Munawwarah	 AlMadina AlMunawwarah; CC BY-SA 4.0
Dubai, United Arab Emirates	دبي	Dubai	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Video
Muscat, Oman	مسقط	Muscat	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online  YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online 
Manama, Bahrain	المنامة	Manama	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online  YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online 

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Video
Doha, Qatar	الدوحة	Doha	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Kuwait City, Kuwait	الكويت	Kuwait	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

1.4 Traditional Foods

Arab countries of the Gulf share similar traditional foods. Watch the following videos and learn about their traditional foods.

Traditional Foods

Food in English	Recipe /Video
Kuwait Tradition Food	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Bahrain Tradition Food	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Food in English	Recipe /Video
Qatar Traditional Food	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Oman Tradition Food	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Saudi Arabia Tradition Food	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

1.5 Traditional Clothing

Traditional clothing for women in Arabian Gulf countries is almost the same. Most women wear *Abaya* and Hijab (head scarf called shalya) in public. Abaya is a long black dress that covers all but the hands, feet, and face. Some Abayas are simple and plain; others are with embroidery and different design borders. Also, some women wear a veil called "*Boshiya*". Men wear a *dishdasha or Thobe and headpiece. The dishdasha is a* traditional long robe that covers the whole body, except the head, hands and feet. The headpiece consists of three pieces: a *gahfiya* (knit skull-cap, *Ghitraa* (large cotton head scarf which either plain white or with red and white checkered pattern), and *Agal* (black cord that keeps the Ghitraa in place). In addition, men wear a long cloak called "Bisht" (used for ceremonies and occasions) and Sirwal (loose undergarment pants, usually white). In Oman women wear long dress (thobe) worn over trousers (Sirwal) and a headdress (lihaf). Men wear Disdasha and M*uzzar* (turban).

Watch the following videos and learn about the traditional clothing in Arab countries of the Gulf

Traditional clothing

Country	Clothing
Tradition Clothing in Bahrain	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Tradition Clothing in Qatar	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Tradition Clothing in Oman	 Tradition Omani Men Clothe; CC BY2.0

Country	Clothing
Tradition Clothing in Saudi Arabia	 Figure 4.5.1: Copy and Paste Caption here. (Copyright; author via source)
Tradition Clothing in United Arab Emirates	**YouTube Video** *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online **YouTube Video** *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Presentational Activity

You traveled to Oman. You sent a postcard to your family. Tell them about the famous cities, capital, historical places, and famous dishes.

This page titled 4.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

5: NUMBERS الأرقام “AL-ARQAM”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters ق ف غ ع ظ ط in their different shapes.
- Ask someone about his/her age, birthday, and address
- Ask simple questions and the answers of time, number, human, and non-human using Interrogative Words
- Count Arabic Numbers from ٠-١٠٠
- Learn about Egypt, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

5.1: Letters

5.2: Vocabulary

5.3: Dialogue and Reading

5.4: Numbers الأرقام

5.5: Culture

Watch the video about the history of Arabic Numbers.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 5: Numbers الأرقام “Al-Arqam” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

5.1: Letters

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters ق ف غ ع ظ ط in their different shapes.
- Pronounce the letters ق ف غ ع ظ ط with short and long vowels.

In this section, you are going to learn how to pronounce these 6 Arabic letters ق ف غ ع ظ ط and their articulation with their short and long vowels, (Al Harakat)

In the table below, You are going to learn Letters & Sounds ق ف غ ع ظ ط

Arabic Letters

لفظ الحرف letter pronunciation	شكل الحرف letter shape
taa	ط
Dhaa (Dh deep "th")	ظ
Ayn	ع
Ghayn	غ
Faa	ف
Qaaf	ق

Listen and match the letter with its sound & repeat

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

In the table below, we are going to learn about long & short vowels for letters ط ظ ع غ ف ق- Al Harakat

Letter with short and long vowels

الحرف Letter	الحرف مع الحركات Letter with short vowels	الحرف الممدود letter with long vowels
ط	طَ طِ طُ طْ	طا طي طو
ظ	ظَ ظِ ظُ ظْ	ظا ظي ظو
ع	عَ عِ عُ عْ	عا عي عو
غ	غَ غِ غُ غْ	غا غي غو
ف	فَ فِ فُ فْ	فا في فو
ق	قَ قِ قُ قْ	قا قي قو

The Letter Tuaa "ط"

Listen and repeat the letter ط sound below

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Pronunciation of Letter ط:

To pronounce the letter "**ط**", put the tip of your tongue up against the bony ridge behind your teeth on the roof of your mouth and drop your tongue low in your mouth. Try to say "t" holding this position. The result will be "**ط**". The letter "**ط**" is emitted from the top part of the tip of the tongue and the gum line of the two top incisors. (See Figure 5.1.1)

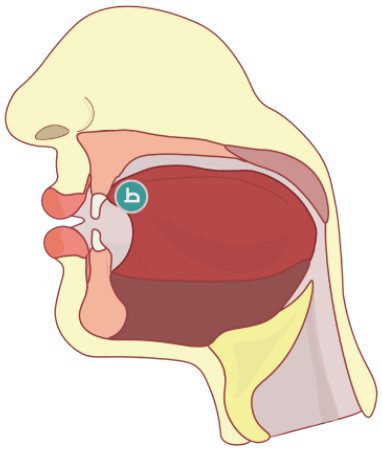


Figure 5.1.1: Pronunciation of Letter ط

In the table below, we are going to learn about the letter ط with the short vowels and sukun

Short Vowels

The Sound of Sukun	The sound with dihamah	The sound with kasra	The sound with Fatah
طْ	طُ	طِ	طَ

The letter with the long vowels

Long vowels

The letter with the long vowels oo	The letter with the long vowels ee	The letter with the long vowel aa
طو	طي	طا

Writing the letter ط at the (beginning. middle, end) of the word.

The Letter Taa "**ط**" (See the figure)

"**ط**" is a connector letter, and it is written in two separate steps. It is important for the loop to be written in one motion and then connected to the word. To write the independent "**ط**", start on the line and make the loop first. It should be large, oval, and should rest along the line lengthwise. The final step is the downstroke. After forming the loop, lift your pen and draw this stroke as you draw Alif - from the top down. The downstroke should be near the left end of the loop.

To write "**ـطـ**" in the beginning of the word, follow the same steps and then, without stopping to write the downstroke, continue into the connecting segment, but without a tooth. When writing "**ـطـ**" in the medial position, start from the connecting segment

and continue along with the previous steps. In its final position, "ـــط" should end when past the oval in a relatively short line.

Writing Letter ط

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـط	ـطـ	طـ	ط

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Tuaa

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.1.2

Find the letter Tuaa with dihamah

ظ طا ط طو ظ طِ ظ طي ظ ظَ

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Dhaa "ظ"

Listen and repeat the letter ظ sound below

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Pronunciation of Letter ظ:

The letter "ظ" is an emphatic sound that deepens the quality of the surrounding vowels. The articulation place of the letter "ظ" is the top side of the tip of the tongue and the bottom edges of the two top front incisors. You should pay attention that the topside of the tip strikes with the edge of the teeth and not the plates of the teeth. (See the figure 5.1.2)

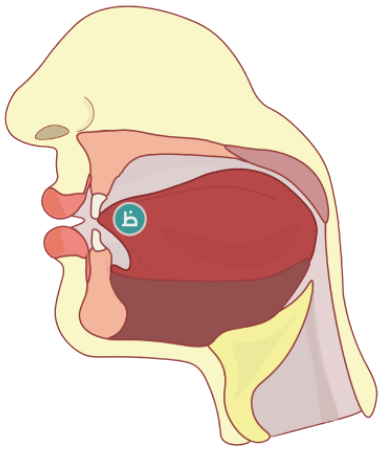


Figure 5.1.2: Pronunciation of Letter ظ

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

Short vowels

The sound of Sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with fathah
ظْ	ظُ	ظِ	ظَ

The letter with the long vowels

Long vowel

The letter with the long vowel oo	The letter with the long vowel ee	The letter with the long vowel aa
ظو	ظي	ظا

Writing the letter ظ at the (beginning. middle, end) of the word.

The Letter Thaa "**ظ**"

You write the letter "ظ" the same way you write the letter "ط", with the addition of a dot on the top

Writing letter ظ Form

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـظ	ـظـ	ظـ	ظ

Watch the video and learn how to write the letter Dhaa

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.1.3

Find the word that has long vowel of the letter Dhaa

ظافر شارع قريب

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Ayen "ع"

Listen and repeat the letter ع

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Pronunciation of Letter ع:

The letter Ayen "ع" has not an equivalent sound in English, and it needs practice to pronounce it right. The letter Ayen "ع" articulation place is in the middle part of the throat. The middle part of the throat is the part that is half way in between the beginning and the end of the throat. The process to pronounce the letter "ع" is that you need to tighten your throat muscles as if you were blocking off the air passage from the inside. You can feel your muscles by putting your hand on your throat. "ع" is a very important sound in Arabic, and you must learn to say it properly in order to be understood. (See figure 5.1.3)

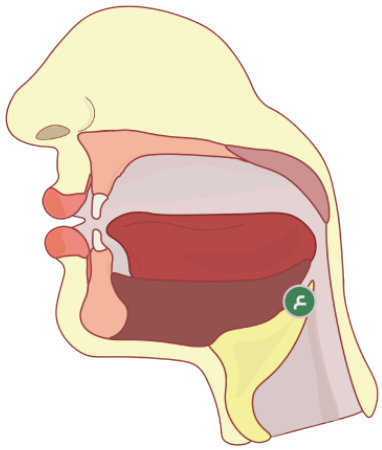


Figure 5.1.3: Pronunciation of Letter ع

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

Short vowels

The sound with Sukun	The sound with Dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with fathah
عْ	عُ	عِ	عَ

The letter with the long vowels

Long vowels

The letter with the long vowel oo	The letter with the long vowel ee	The letter with the long vowel aa
عو	عي	عا

Writing the letter ع at the (beginning. middle, end) of the word.

The letter “ع” is a connecting letter and has four different shapes according to its location in the word. Independent “ع” has two parts, and they are the head and the body. The head takes the shape of a lowercase “c” on the line, and the second part is the tail, which takes the shape of a large “C”.

To write the initial “عـ”, draw the head, which is the shape of the small “c” , then draw the segment to be connected to the following letter.

When “ع” is connected from a previous letter in the medial and final positions, the body of the letter becomes a closed loop "/ـعـ ـع".

In some forms of calligraphy, the body of the loop is filled but in others is not "ـعـ".

The Letter Ayen "ع" (See the figure)

Writing letter ع form

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـع	ـعـ	عـ	ع

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Aien

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.1.4

Find the long vowels of the letter Ayen.

عَ عا عُ عو عِ عي

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Ghain "غ"

Listen and repeat the letter غ

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Pronunciation of Letter غ

There is not an exact equivalent sound to the letter "غ", but it is very close to sound of the combination of the two letters "*GH*." The articulation place of the letter "غ" is the throat. The articulation point is the closest part of the throat, which is the beginning of the throat, or the closest to the mouth. The sound of "غ" is similar to the sound you make when you gargle. (See figure 5.1.4)

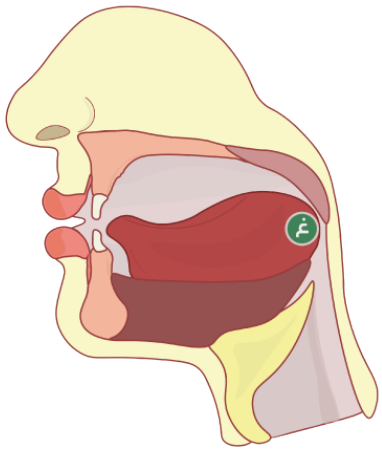


Figure 5.1.4: Pronunciation of Letter غ

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

Short vowels

The sound with Sukun	The sound with Dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with Fathah
غْ	غُ	غِ	غَ

The letter with the long vowels

Long vowels

The letter with the long vowel oo	The letter with the long vowel ee	The letter with the long vowel aa
غو	غي	غا

Writing the letter غ at the (beginning. middle, end) of the word.

You write the letter "غ" in the same way you write the letter "غ", but you place a dot on the top.

The Letter Ghain "غ" (See the figure)

letter form

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـغ	ـغـ	غـ	غ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Ghein

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.1.5

Which of the following is the Arabic letter "غ"

Ayen Ghain Faa Qaaf Thaa

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Faa “ف”

Listen and repeat the letter ف

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Pronunciation of Letter ف:

This letter is pronounced like “*f*” in the word “feather”. The articulation place of the letter “ف” is the lips, between the inside of the lower lip and the tips/ edges of the two top front incisors. Usually, aspiration occurs while the pronunciation of the letter “ف”. (See figure 5.1.5)

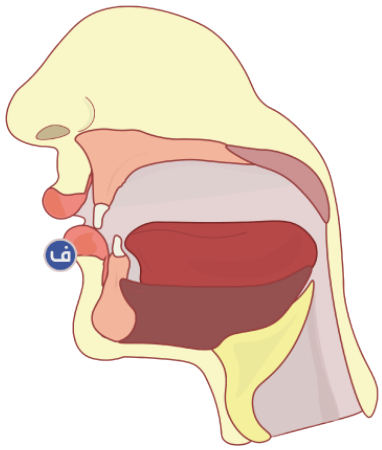


Figure 5.1.5: Pronunciation of Letter ف

The letter with the short vowels and sukun

Short vowels

The sound with Sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with fathah
فْ	فُ	فِ	فَ

The letter with the long vowels

Long vowels

The letter with the long vowel oo	The letter with the long vowel ee	The letter with the long vowel aa
فو	في	فا

Writing letterف in its three forms(Initial, Medial, and final).

The letter "**ف**" is a connector letter and can be connected from the two sides. It's independent and final forms have a tail that is unusual in that it remains on the line rather that dipping below.

To write the independent "**ف**", begin above the line and draw a flat loop to your left and down around. Keep the loop of the "**ف**" small and just above the line, resting on a short neck. Continue along the line into a hook to finish the tail.

To write the initial "**فـ**", begin the same way then finish with a connecting segment to attach to the next letter.

The medial "**ـفـ**" starts from the connecting segment and loops up to the left and back around to the line, then into the connecting segment.

In the medial position, the loop is small and oval-shaped.

The final “ـفـ” combines the shape of the medial position with the tail of the independent “ف”

Writing Letter ف

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـف	ـفـ	فـ	ف

Watch the video to learn how to write the letters Faa

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.1.6

Find the short vowels of the letter Faa in the following:

فَ فا فُ فو فِ في فْ

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Letter Qaaf “ق”

Listen and repeat the letter ق

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Pronunciation of Letter ق:

The articulation place of the letter “ق” is the tongue. The letter “ق” is articulated from the deepest part of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth in the area of the soft palate. The letter “ق” is emphatic counterpart to the sound

of “*k*”. Like the other emphatic sounds, it is pronounced with the tongue low in the mouth, and it impacts the quality of the surrounding vowels so that the fatha sounds like “u” in “but”. The letter “Qaaf” “**ق**” is pronounced at the very back of the tongue. Open your mouth and say aah, as if you were at a doctor’s appointment. Your tongue should be flat in your mouth. Without raising your tongue pull it back so that the base of it closes off air by pulling back against the throat. The only thing that should move in your mouth is your tongue, and only at the very back, as if you were sliding it back like a sliding door. At this point you should be able to breathe through your mouth, although it is wide open. Listen to yourself pronouncing the letter “**ق**”. (See figure 5.1.6)

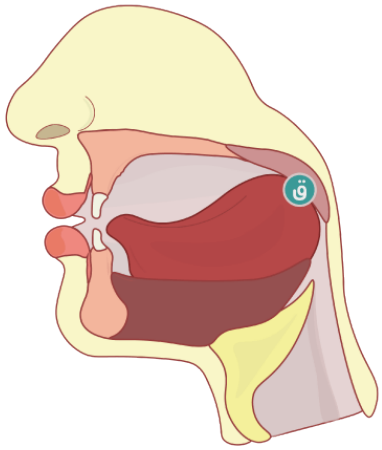


Figure 5.1.6: Pronunciation of Letter ق

Common Mistakes in pronouncing the letter “**ق**”

- Either the letter is articulated on the hard palate or close to it, so it ends up sounding like an English “k”.

Or the letter is pronounced not from the tongue, but from the throat, and the resultant incorrect sound is a cross between the letter “**غ**” and “**ق**”

The letter with short vowels and sukun

Short vowels

The sound with sukun	The sound with dhamah	The sound with kasrah	The sound with fathah
قْ	قُ	قِ	قَ

The letter with the long vowels

Long vowel

The letter with the long vowel oo	The letter with the long vowel ee	The letter with the long vowel aa
قو	قي	قا

Writing the letter ق in its three forms (Initial, Medial, and final).

The letter “**ق**” is a connector letter, and its shape is similar to the letter “**ق**” in its connected positions. However, “ق is written with two dots above it. In the independent and final positions, the “**ق**” has a deep semicircle tail that drops well below the line.

To write the independent “**ق**”, make the same loop you made for “**ق**, then drop below the line to draw the tail and bring the tail back up to the line.

The final “**ـق**” has a tail that drops well below the line.

Writing Letter ق

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـق	ـقـ	قـ	ق

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Qaaf

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.1.7

True or False

The word " قَرِيب" has a short vowel _َ of the letter Qaaf

Answer available at the end of this section.

Review the letters in their long & short vowels form in the charts below

Exercise 5.1.8

Write the letters in their correct form in the chart

طا ظو عا ع ق فو ط قي ظ غ ف غا طي ظا طَ ظِ عُ عو طو ظي عي فا غو

Letters with Long Vowels

The letters with the long vowel oo	The letters with the long vowel ee	The letters with the long vowel aa
Answer available at the end of this section.	*Answer available at the end of this section.*	*Answer available at the end of this section.*

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.1.9

Write the letters in their short vowels in the chart

ط قِ غِ قُ غُ فُ ظُ عِ ظَ عُ ظِ طَ ظْ قْ غْ فَ غَ ظُ عْ طِ فْ قِ عَ

Letters with short vowels

The letters with Dhamah	The letters wityh kasrah	The letters with fathah	The letters with sukun
Answer available at the end of this section.	*Answer available at the end of this section.*	*Answer available at the end of this section.*	*Answer available at the end of this section.*

Watch this video about the letters ق ف غ ع ظ ط

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Query 5.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Choose the correct form of the letter ط

Query 5.1.10

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

TChoose the correct form of the letter ظ

Query 5.1.11

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Choose the correct form of the letter ع

Query 5.1.12

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Choose the correct form of the letter غ

Query 5.1.13

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Choose the correct form of the letter ف

Query 5.1.14

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Choose the correct form of the letter ق

Query 5.1.15

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Find the letter Tuaa

Query 5.1.16

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Find the long vowel of letter FAA

Query 5.1.17

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Find the letters that come in the medial form

Query 5.1.18

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 5.1.19

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Exercise 5.1.1

Connect the letters, and write each word:

ع + ر + ا + ش

ب + ي + ب + ط

ف + ت + ا + هـ

ق + ر + ز + أ

ب + ي + ر + ق

م + ق + ر

Answer available at the end of this section.

Query 5.1.20

Answers

Exercise 5.1.2

Exercise 5.1.3

ظافر

Exercise 5.1.4

عا عو عي

Exercise 5.1.5

Ghain

Exercise 5.1.6

فَ فُ فِ فْ

Exercise 5.1.7

True

عو غو فو قو طو ظو

عي غي في قي طي ظي

عا غا فا قا طا ظا

Exercise 5.1.8

طْ ظْ عْ غْ فُ قُ

طِ ظِ عِ غِ فِ قِ

طَ ظَ عَ غَ فَ قَ

طْ ظْ عْ غْ فْ قْ

Exercise 5.1.1

شارع، طبيب، هاتف، أزرق، قريب، رقم

This page titled 5.1: Letters is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

5.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).
- Count and write numbers ٠ - ٢٠.

Vocabulary

Look at the picture below. What do you see?

Vocabulary Images

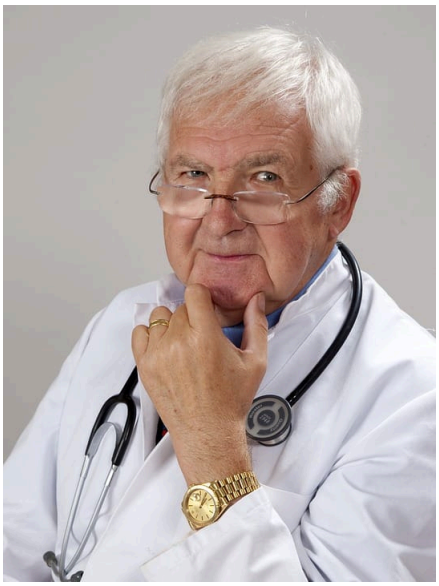
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	F V
 Student	Talib	student	
 Street	Sharie	Street	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	F V
 Number	Raqm	Number	
 Telephone	hatif	telephone	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	F V
 Address	eunwan	Address	
 Blue	Azraq	blue	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	F V
 Yellow	aisfr	yellow	
 Baghdad	Baghdad	Baghdad	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	F V
 Abu Dhabi	abu zabi	Abu Dhabi	
 Aden	eadn	Aden	

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	F V
 Doctor	tabib	Doctor	
 Building	binaya	Building	

Months

Months of the year

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Happy New Year		Year
 Calendar		Mont

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 January		Janua
 February		Februa

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 March		Marc
 April		Apri

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 May		May
 June		June

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 July		July
 Augusts; CC BY-SA 4.0		August

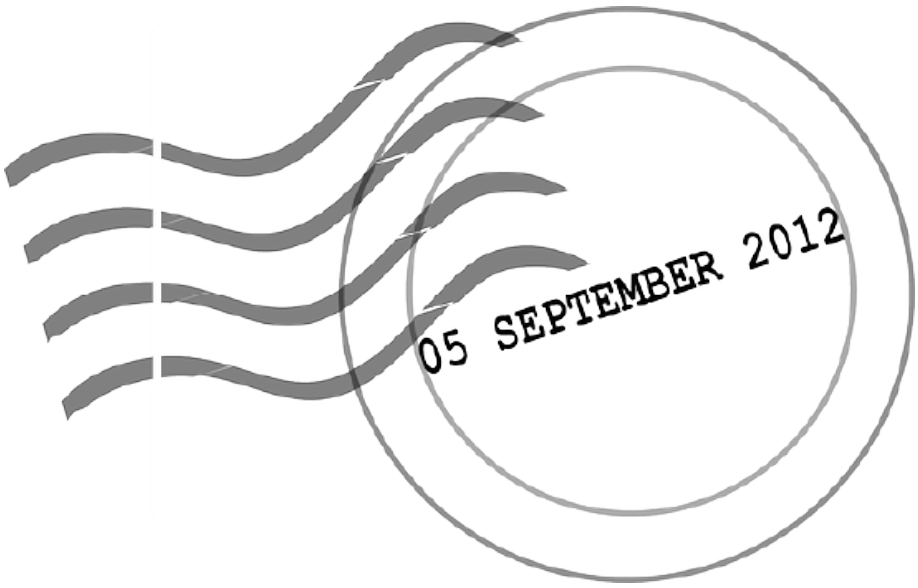
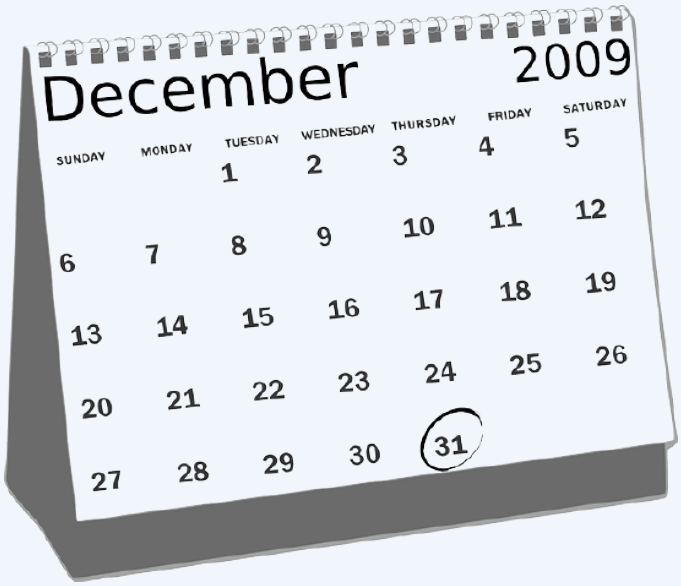
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 September		Septem
 October		Octob

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 November		Novem
 December		Decem

Arabic Numerals from 0-100

What you need to know about Arabic Numerals?

- Western Numerals 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8, and 9, also described as the Arabic numerals, are considered the first ten digits that are usually used for writing decimals. These numerals are called Arabic because they were presented to Europe by the Arabs.
- While the Eastern (mashriq) Arabic Numerals, also called Arabic- Hindu numeral, are currently used in the east of the Arabic countries.
- These are the Arabic Numerals that are used nowadays: **٠، ١، ٢، ٣، ٤، ٥، ٦، ٧، ٨، ٩**
- Arabic letters are read and written from right to left, but the Arabic numerals are read and written from left to right.

YouTube Video

- *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.*

  View this YouTube Video online

Count with Me from (٠-١٠)

Let's learn how to count in Arabic from ٠-١٠

Arabic Numbers from 1-10

Arabic Number	English Number	Number pronunciation	Arabic Word
٠	٠	Sifer	صفر
١	1	wahid	واحد
٢	2	Ithnan	إثنان
٣	3	Thalatha	ثلاثة
٤	4	arba-ah	أربعة
٥	5	khamsah	خمسة
٦	6	Sittah	ستة
٧	7	Sab-ah	سبعة
٨	8	thamaniya	ثمانية
٩	9	tis-ah	تسعة
١٠	10	ashara	عشرة

Exercise 5.2.5

Write the numbers in Arabic numbers: ٠ - ١٠ from right to left, and check the answer.



Numbers

Answer available at the end of this section.

Arabic Numbers from 11-20

Arabic numbers from 11-20

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
١١	11	ahada ‘ashara	eleven	إحدى عشر
١٢	12	ithna ‘ashara	tweleve	إثنا عشر
١٣	13	thalathata 'ashar	thirteen	ثلاثة عشر
١٤	14	arbaata 'ashar	forteen	أربعة عشر
١٥	15	khamsata 'ashar	fifteen	خمسة عشر
١٦	16	sittata 'ashar	sixteen	ستة عشر
١٧	17	sabata 'ashar	seventeen	سبعة عشر
١٨	18	thamaniyata 'ashar	eighteen	ثمانية عشر
١٩	19	tisata 'ashar	ninteen	تسعة عشر
٢٠	20	ishrun	twenty	عشرون

Interactive Element

Write your phone number in Arabic.

Interactive Element

Tell three important phone numbers in Arabic for your international friend that he/ she needs to have in case of emergency.

Exercise 5.2.6

Look at the pictures below and answer the question

What is the number of the street in the picture in Arabic number? ma raqm alshaarie fi alsuwra ما رقم الشارع في الصورة



Street Number

Answer available at the end of this section.

Activity

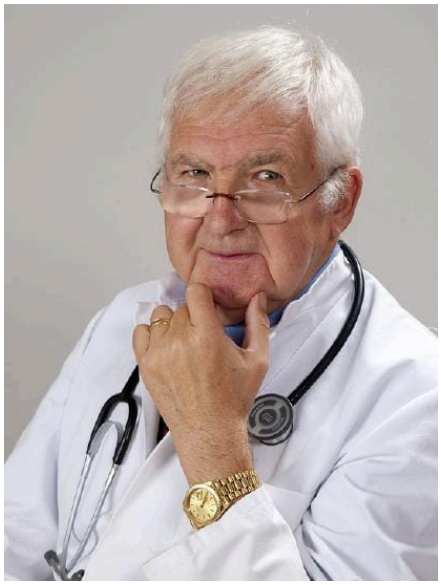
Look at the picture below and choose the correct word that matches the meaning



Query 5.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 5.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 5.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 2

Drag the words into the correct boxes below

Query 5.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 3

Highlight the letters in different directions to Find the words in the grid

Query 5.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Answers

Exercise 5.2.5

٩٨٧٦٥٤٣٢١٠

Exercise 5.2.6

١٦

This page titled 5.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

- 8.2: Vocabulary by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- 5.4: Numbers الأرقام by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Say and write my phone number and home number.
- Ask and answer about someone's phone number, age, and home number.

Dialogue 1 Asking about the Birth date

In this dialogue, Tariq and Farah are asking about their birthday. Listen to their conversation and then practice with your partner.

* In Arabic, you start with the date, then the month. Unlike the American way, the month then the date.

Recording

Asking about birthday

English	Transcription	Arabic
peace be upon you	Assalamu Alaikum	طارق: السَّلامُ عليكم
and peace be upon you	Wa Aalkium Assalaam	فرح: وَ عَليكمُ السَّلام
What's your date of birth, Farah?	mataa eid miladik ya Farah?	طارق: مَتَى عِيدُ مِيلادكِ يا فَرح؟
On October 12th. And you?	fi aktubar ithnaa a'shar wa 'anta?	فرح:فِي 12 أُكتُوبر و أنتَ؟
I was born on April 3rd	Anna fi 'iibril thalaathah	طارق: أنا فِي 3 إبريل
Thank you	shkraan	فرح: شُكرًا
You're welcome	efwaan	طارق: عَفواً

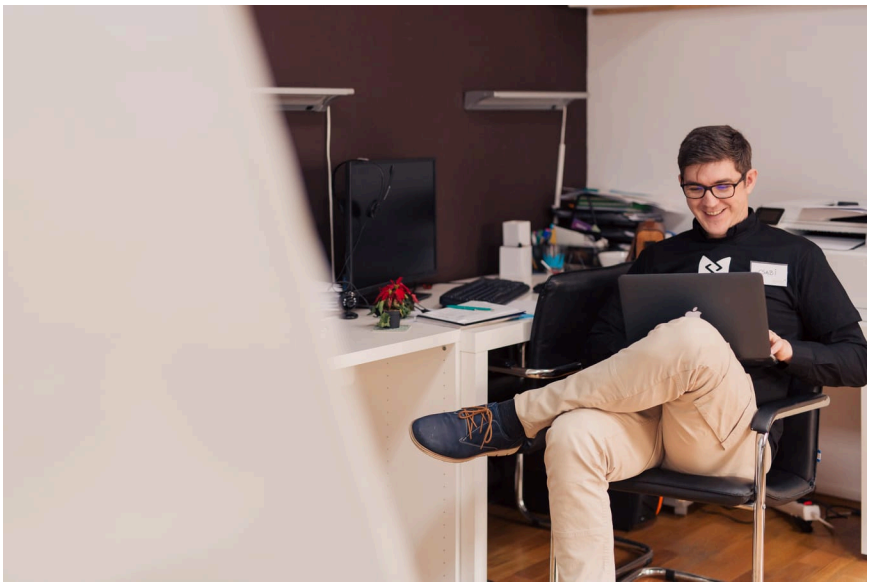
Query 5.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading

Read the paragraph below about Tariq. Then practice the reading with your partners.



Tariq

طَارِق طَالبٌ يَدْرُسُ فِي جامِعَةِ بَغداد.

يَسْكنُ طَارِق فِي بَيْت في مّدينة بَغداد .

بَيْتُ طَارق في شارع عَدَن ،

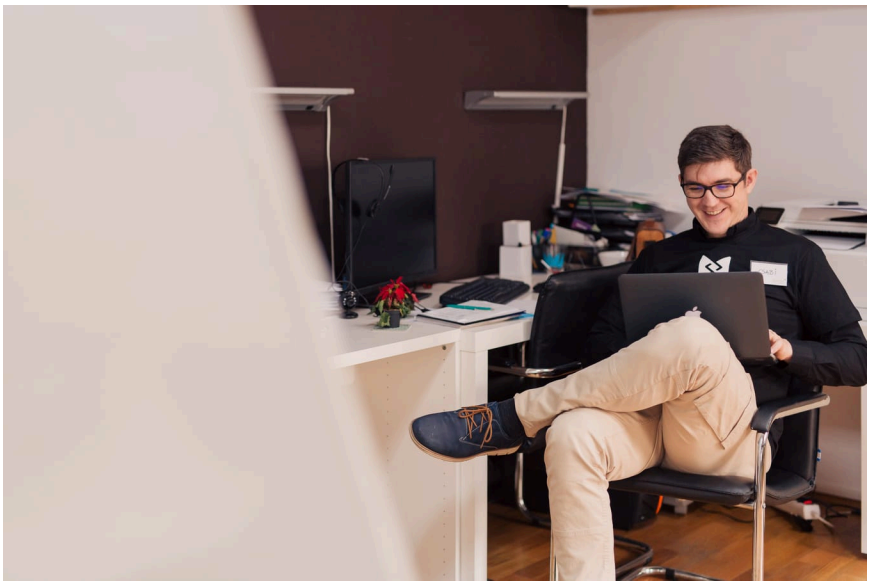
رَقَم بَيْتُ طارِق 5 (خَمْسَة)

Practice Activity 1

Fill up a digital form with your name, birth date, and phone number in Arabic. For example, Facebook digital form.

Dialogue 2 Asking about Age

In this dialogue, Tariq and Farah are asking about ages. Listen to their conversation, read the text, and then practice with your partner.



Tariq



Farah

English

Query 5.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Practice Activity 2

Speak and practice with your partner.

Pronunciation	Response	Pronunciation	Question in Arabic
eumri	عمري I am	kam eumaruka?	كَمْ عُمرُك؟ How old rae you?
fi	في in	mataa eid miladik?	مَتَى عِيدُ ميلادك؟ When's your birthday?
fi	في in	w 'ant mataa eid miladik?	و أَنْت متى عيد ميلادك؟ and you when's your date of birth?
efwaan.	عفواً You're welocme.	shkraan	شُكراً thank you

Dialogue 3 اَلو مَن معي؟- 'Alu man ma'ay?

In this dialogue, Tariq is calling Judi to take doctor's address. Listen to their conversation and then practice with your partner.

Recording



Judy

آلو مَن معي؟- 'Alu man ma'ay?

English	Transcription	Arabic
Hello		طَارق: آلو مَرْحَباً
Hi. who's this?		جُودي : أَهْلاً مَنْ مَعِي؟
I am Tariq Arabi. Please I want the doctor's address.		طَارق: أَنا طَارق عَرَبي مَنْ فَضلك أريد عنوان الطبيب
The doctor's address is close to Baghdad Street.		جودي :عنوان الطبيب قريب من شارع بغداد
What's the street's number?		طارق : وما رقم الشارع؟
The Street's number is 10.		جودي :رقم الشارع 10
What's the doctor's address?		طارق :و ما عنوان الطبيب؟
Street 10, Aden Building		عنوان الطبيب شارع 10 بناية عدن
Thank you		شكراً
You're welcome.		عفواً

Query 5.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity #1

Pretend you are the customer and your classmate is the local sports club representative.

You want to register in a local sports club. Create a dialogue with the sports club representative by providing the following information:

Your name (first and last name), birth date (date, and month), home address (house number, street name, city, and state), and phone number.

Activity #2

Search for a famous Arab soccer player, then write his name, where he is from, his age, what school he goes to, his family, and his shirt number.

This page titled 5.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

5.4: Numbers الأرقام

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer simple questions about time, and phone number, by using Interrogative Words: who مَن "Min", when مَتى "Mata", what ما "Maa" / "Maaza" ماذا, how much كم "Kam".
- Count Arabic Numbers from ٠-١٠٠.
- Say and Write your phone number and birthdate.

أدوات الاستفهام- Interrogative words

Interrogative words: who مَن "Min", when مَتى "Mata", what ما "Maa" / "Maaza" ماذا, how much كم "Kam" are used to ask questions.

In the table below, you will learn about four interrogative words that used to ask questions with examples

Interrogative words

مَنْ	مَتَى	مَا	كَمْ
Used to ask about human question	Used to ask about time.	Used to ask a non-human question.	Used to ask about number or quantity
مَنْ مَعي؟ Who's with you? -man maei?	When's your birthday? mataa eid miladiki?	مَا عِنْوانك؟ What's your address? - ma eunwanaki?	كَمْ عُمْرُك؟ How old are you? kam eumarka?

Activity 1

Type أدوات استفهام- Interrogative words مَن, متى, ما, كم **in the blank using Arabic Language from this link (http://www.arabic-keyboard.org/)**

Query 5.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

How many?

كَم is an interrogative word used to ask about number or quantity

أداة الاستفهام تستخدم للسؤال عن العدد أو الكمية

Interrogative words

Pronunciation	Response In Arabic	Pronunciation	Question
eumri 20 sana	عمري 20 سنة	kam eumarka?	كَمْ عُمْرُك؟ How old are you?
alsaaeat alwahida	السَّاعةُ الواحِدة	- kam alsaaeati?	كَمْ السَّاعة؟ What time is it?

Asking Questions about Non-Human

مَا is an interrogative word used to ask about a non-human question أداة الاستفهام تستخدم للسؤال عن غير العاقل

Interrogative words

Pronunciation	Response in Arabic	Pronunciation	Question
sharie baghdad	شَّارع بغداد	ma eunwanaki	مَا عِنوانك؟ What's your address?
858-666-0001	858-666-0001	ma raqm hatifuk?	مَا رَقْمُ هَاتِفُك؟ What's phone number?

Asking about the Time

مَتى is an interrogative word used to ask about time أداة الاستفهام تستخدم للسؤال عن الزمان

Interrogative words

Pronunciation	Response	Pronunciation	Question
iibril 4	إِبْرِيل4	mataa eid miladiki?	مَتى عِيدُ مِيلادك؟ When's your birthday?
fi alsabah	In the morning- فِي الصَّبَاح	mataa tadrous?	مَتى تَدْرُس؟ When do you study?

Asking Questions about Human

مَن is an interrogative word used to ask about human question أداة الاستفهام تستخدم للسؤال عن العاقل

Interrogative words

Pronunciation	Response	Pronunciation	Question
ana tariq eyd	أَنا طارق عَربي	man maei?	مَن مَعي؟ Who's this ?
'ana zafir'ana zafir	أَنا فَرَح	man'anti?	مَنْ أنتِ؟ Who are you?

Activity 2- Drag the words and drop them in the correct interrogative box

Query 5.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 3 -Answer the questions before flipping the card.

Query 5.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 4- Type in Arabic using this link (http://www.arabic-keyboard.org/) to do the exercise below:

Query 5.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Arabic Numerals from ٠-١٠٠

What you need to know about Arabic Numerals?

- Western Numerals ٠,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8, and 9, also described as the Arabic numerals, are considered the first ten digits that are usually used for writing decimals. These numerals are called Arabic because they were presented to Europe by the Arabs.
- While the Eastern (mashriq) Arabic Numerals, also called Arabic- Hindu numeral, are currently used in the east of the Arabic countries.
- These are the Arabic Numerals that are used nowadays: ٠، ١، ٢، ٣، ٤، ٥، ٦، ٧، ٨، ٩
- Arabic letters are read and written from right to left, but the Arabic numerals are read and written from left to right.
- YouTube Video

  This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

  View this YouTube Video online

Count with Me from ٠-١٠)

Let's learn how to count in Arabic from ٠-١٠

Arabic Numbers from 1-10

Arabic Number	English Number	Number pronunciation	Arabic Word
٠	0	Sifer	صفر
١	1	wahid	واحد
٢	2	Ithnan	إثنان
٣	3	Thalatha	ثلاثة
٤	4	arba-ah	أربعة
٥	5	khamsah	خمسة
٦	6	Sittah	ستة
٧	7	Sab-ah	سبعة
٨	8	thamaniya	ثمانية
٩	9	tis-ah	تسعة
١٠	10	ashara	عشرة

Exercise 5.4.5

Write the numbers below in Arabic numbers from right to left



Numbers

Answer available at the end of this section.

Arabic Numbers from 11-20

Arabic numbers from 11-20

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
١١	11	ahada ‘ashara	eleven	إحدى عشر
١٢	12	ithna ‘ashara	tweleve	إثنا عشر
١٣	13	thalatha 'ashar	thirteen	ثلاثة عشر
١٤	14	arbaa 'ashar	forteen	أربعة عشر
١٥	15	khamsa 'ashar	fifteen	خمسة عشر
١٦	16	sitta 'ashar	sixteen	ستة عشر
١٧	17	saba 'ashar	seventeen	سبعة عشر
١٨	18	thamaniya 'ashar	eighteen	ثمانية عشر
١٩	19	tisa 'ashar	ninteen	تسعة عشر
٢٠	20	ishrun	twenty	عشرون

Exercise 5.4.6

Look at the pictures below and answer the question

What is the number of the street in the picture in Arabic number? ma raqm alshaarie fi alsuwra ما رقم الشارع في الصورة



Street Number

Answer available at the end of this section.

Arabic Numbers from 21-30

Let's learn more Arabic numbers from 20-100. دعونا نتعلم الأرقام العربية

Arabic numbers 21-30

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
٢١	21	wahed wa-'ishrun	twenty-one	واحد و عشرون
٢٢	22	ithnane wa-'ishrun	twenty-two	إثنان وعشرون
٢٣	23	thalatha wa-'ishrun	twenty-three	ثلاثة و عشرون
٢٤	24	arba'a wa-'ishrun	twenty-four	أربعة و عشرون
٢٥	25	khamsa wa-'ishrun	twenty-five	خمسة و عشرون
٢٦	26	sitta wa-'ishrun	twenty-six	ستة و عشرون
٢٧	27	sab'a wa-'ishrun	twenty-seven	سبعة وعشرون
٢٨	28	thamaniya wa-'ishrun	twenty-eight	ثمانية و عشرون
٢٩	29	tis'a wa-'ishrun	twenty-nine	تسعة و عشرون
٣٠	30	thalathun	thirty	ثلاثون

Arabic Numbers from 30-100

Let's learn more Arabic numbers from 30-100. دعونا نتعلم الأرقام العربية

Arabic numbers 30-100

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
٣٠	30	thalathun	thirsty	ثلاثون
٤٠	40	arba'un	forty	أربعون
٥٠	50	khamsun	fifty	خمسون
٦٠	60	sittun	sixty	ستون
٧٠	70	sab'un	seventy	سبعون
٨٠	80	thamanun	eighty	ثمانون
٩٠	90	tis'un	ninety	تسعون
١٠٠	100	mi'a	hundred	مائة

Answers

Exercise 5.4.5

٩٨٧٦٥٤٣٢١٠

Exercise 5.4.6

١٦

This page titled 5.4: Numbers الأرقام is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

5.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be:

1. Learn about Egypt, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

Egypt مصر: Misr

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Facts to know about Egypt

- Official Name: Arab Republic of Egypt- جمهورية مصر العربية- jumhuriat misr alearabia
- Capital: Cairo- القاهرة- Al Qahirah
- Population: 106,789,274 - (2022)
- Currency: Egyptian Pound- الجنيه المصري- aljunayh almisriu
- Continent: Africa- أفريقيا- afriqya
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة- allughat alearabiat alfushaa alhaditha

1.1 Geographical location and flag



Egypt; CC BY-SA 3.0



Flag of Egypt

Egypt is located in the northeast corner of Africa. It is the link between northeast of Africa with the southwest corner of Asia. It borders with Sudan to the south, libya to the west, the Red sea and Gulf of Aqaba to the east, The Mediterranean Sea to the north, and and Gaza Strip to the northeast. Egypt was a cradle of one of the most ancient Middle Eastern civilization, the Pharaonic ancient Egyptian civilization.

Watch this movie about Ancient Egypt and learn about ancient Egyptian

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

1.2 Famous cities



Egyptian Major Cities

Egyptian major cities

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Cairo	القاهرة	Al Qahirah	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Alexandria	الاسكندرية	Al-Iskandariyah	 Alexandria; CC BY-SA 3.0
Bur Said	بور سعيد	Boor Said	 Bur Said

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
As- Suez	السويس	As -Suways	 As-Suez; CC BY-SA 4.0
Al-Mansourah	المنصورة	Al Mansoorah	 Al-Mansourah; public domain

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Tanta	طنطا	Tanta	 Tanta; CC BY-SA 4.0
Asyut	أسيوط	Assyout	 Asyut; CC BY-SA 3.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Al-Fayoum	الفيوم	Al-Fayyoum	 Al-Fayoum; CC BY-SA 4.0
Az-Zagazig	الزقازيق	Az-Zagazeeq	 Az-Zagazig; CC BY 3.0

1.3 Most famous artifacts

The Great Sphinx of Giza

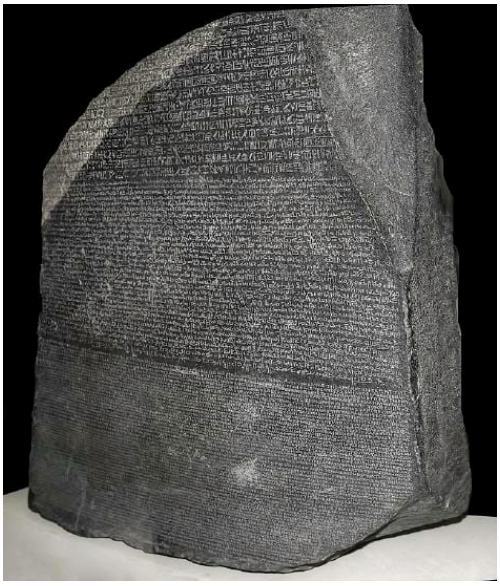
The Great Sphinx of Giza is one of the most famous artifacts in Egypt and one of the largest monuments in the world. It has two parts a lion's body and a human head. It is a huge 4,500-year-old limestone statue measuring 240 feet long and 66 feet high near the Great Pyramid in Giza.



A View of the Great Sphinx of Giza beside a Pyramid; pexels license

The Rosetta Stone

The Rosetta Stone is one of the most ancient artifacts in Egypt. It went back to Pharaoh Ptolemy V. It contains a decree about religious texts written in three different writing systems Greek, Egyptian Hieroglyphics, and Egyptian Demotic. It is the key to undersatnd the ancient writing system of egypt.



The Rosetta Stone; CC BY-SA 4.0

Nefertiti Bust

Nefertiti Bust is one of the most famous artifacts of the most beautiful woman in Ancient Egypt. She is the great royal wife of the Egyptian Pharaoh Akhenaton. The bust is made of limestone covered with modeled gypsum.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Egyptian Pyramids

Egyptian Pyramids are Ancient buildings and great structures that are located in Egypt. They were built during the brightest time of the Egyptian civilizations especially the Great Pyramids of Giza. The oldest pyramids were built around 2630 B.C. at Saqqarah for the king Djoser.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Ramesses II

Ramesses II is known as Ramesses the Great. He was one of the most famous pharaohs of Egypt. He was the third Pharaoh of the Nineteenth Dynasty. He was famous for his bravery, leadership, and martial Skills over the Egyptian army.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Traditional Food & Clothing in Egypt

Most Popular Food in Egypt

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Ful Medames	فول مدمس	Fava Beans Stew with lemon juice, olive oil, garlic and cumin YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Ful Medames; CC BY 3.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Ta'meya	طعمية أو فلافل	Egyptian Falafel YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Falafel; CC BY 2.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Koshari	كشري	Mixed of rice, lentils, macaroni with spicy sauce YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Koshari; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Mulukhiya	ملوخية	leaves of the Corchorus plant with chicken or rabbit or meat YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Mulukhiya; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Hamam Mahshi	حمام محشي	Stuffed young domestic pigeon YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Hamam Mahshi; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Makarona Beshamel	معكرونة بشاميل	Pasta with ground beef and bechamel sauce YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Makarona Beshamel; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Basbousa, a dessert dish	بسبوسة	(Semolina, Coconut, and yogurt) YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Basbousa; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Om Ali	أم علي	Egyptian Bread Pudding made from milk, sugar, and pastry phyllo YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Om Ali; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
		i n e	

Activity 1

Write the missing words after reading the chapter above

Query 5.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Most Popular Traditional Clothing in Egypt

- Egyptian fashion mostly has simple patterns with high-quality cotton, linen, and wool fabrics mixed with Islamic, ottoman, and European cultures, traditions, and customs.
- There are differences in the styles of fashion between rich and poor, farmers and city residents, Muslims and non-Muslims.
- Egyptian Men's outfit differs from one place to another. Men mainly wear "*Gallegaya*" in striped colors with baggy pants and wide and large sleeves. For their headdresses, they put "*taqiyia*", or "*turban*" made from cotton.
- Egyptian women's fashion is mainly inspired by Islamic Culture attire. Women wear "*Gallebaya*" that fully cover their bodies with headdresses, ears, and necks. while some of the women wear European fashion and others wear Islamic clothing with either *Hijab* or *Burka*.

Watch this video about Ancient Egyptian Fashion

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Egyptian Women's Traditional Clothing



Egyptian Woman's Dress; CC BY-SA 4.0



Islamic Egyptian Woman's Abayia; CC BY-SA 3.0



Egyptian Woman's Dress; CC BY-SA 4.0

Egyptian Men's Traditional Clothing



Egyptian wearing gellabiyas; public domain

Activity

Plan a trip to Egypt during summer break. List the cities and historical places you want to visit and the famous dishes you want to eat.

This page titled 5.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

6: AT HOME في البيت “ FII ALBAYET”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to

- Identify six letters ك ل م هـ
- Identify furniture and house items.
- Use the vocabulary furniture and house items in dialogues.
- Learn the present tense verb conjugation, interrogative words, and colors.
- Learn about Yemen's culture, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

6.1: Letters

6.2: Vocabulary

6.3: Dialogue and Reading

6.4: Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام, New Verbs and Colors

6.5: Culture

This page titled 6: At Home في البيت “ fii Albayet” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

6.1: Letters

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters ك ل م هـ in their different shapes.
- Pronounce the letters ك ل م هـ with short and long vowels.

Letters in this section

Letter Name اسم الحرف	Letter shape شكل الحرف
Kaaf	ك
Laam	ل
Meem	م
Haa	هـ

The Letter Kaaf ك

This letter corresponds to English "*k*". ك represents a familiar sound that takes no extra effort on your part. The articulation place of the letter ك is the tongue.

The letter ك is articulated from the deepest part of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth in the area of the hard palate.

The letter ك is closer to the mouth and farther from the throat than the letter ق . Remember that ق is an emphatic letter that deepens the quality of surrounding vowels, whereas vowels surrounding ك are frontal. ك is often mispronounced at an articulation point further back in the mouth rather than the correct articulation point, resulting in a sound closer to the letter ق . (See Figure 6.1.1)

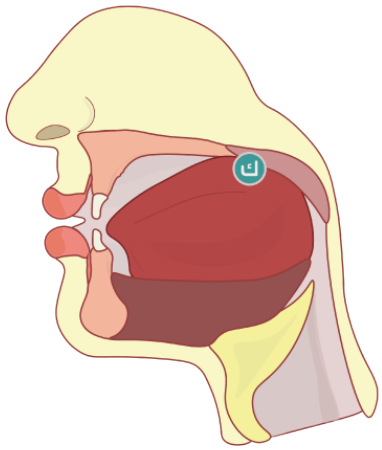


Figure 6.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ك

The tables below show the sound of the letter Khaa with short and long vowels.

The letter ك with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
كْ	كُ	كِ	كَ

The letter ك with long vowels

The long vowel “و ” oo	The long vowel ‘’ي” ee	The long vowel “ا” aa
كو	كي	كا

The letter ك is a connector letter. To write the independent ك, start above the line, draw straight down to the line, then curve and follow the line. Make a tiny hook at the end, then pick up the pen to draw a little “hamza” “”.
The shape of the initial ـكـ is different. When “ك” is connected to a letter it has a crossbar on the top. To write the initial ـكـ, begin as you do the independent form, drawing down to the line, then make a right angle and draw along it into a connecting segment. Note that the body of the initial ـكـis not precisely perpendicular to the line on the paper; it may be slightly slanted or even curved, depending on individual style.
After you finish writing the skeleton of the word, go back and cross the ـكـ.

Medial ـكـ is written like the initial ـكـ, except that you must start from a connecting segment on the line and draw up, them trace the same line back down.
Final ـك is similar in shape to the independent ك, except that it is connected to the previous letter. (Watch the video)

The letter ك in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـك	ـكـ	كـ	ك

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter kaaf

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 6.1.1

Which of the following Kaaf is in the Medial shape?

ـكـ - كـ - ك - ـك

Answer available at the end of this section.

The letter Laam ل

The articulation point of the letter "ل" is from the tongue. The letter "ل" is articulated from the tip of the tongue and what lies opposite to it of the gums of the upper front incisors. The articulation of the letter "ل" is in the shape of an arc - with both sides - until the tip of the tongue meets with the gums of the mentioned teeth. The articulation of the "ل" is an upward movement, not a forward movement like the English "*L*". The letter " ل" articulation point is from the nearest part of the sides of the tongue closer to the mouth, and the end of its tip and what lies opposite to it of the gums of the first upper premolars, the two upper canines, the two upper lateral incisors, and the two upper front incisors. Its articulation point is the front edges of the tongue. The letter "ل" represents the sound of the French and Spanish *"L"* with the tongue farther back and lower down in the mouth, resulting in a more emphatic sound with Arabic "ل". (See figure 6.1.2)

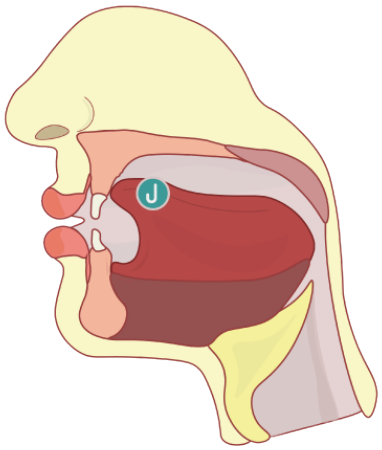


Figure 6.1.2: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ل

The tables below show the sound of the letter Laam with short and long vowels.

The letter ل with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
لْ	لُ	لِ	لَ

The letter ل with long vowels

The long vowel “و ” oo	The long vowel ‘’ي” ee	The long vowel “ا” aa
لو	لي	لا

The letter “ل” is a connector letter. The shape of “ل” is similar to the shape of a hook. To write the independent “ل”, start at the top and draw straight down, continuing below the line and into the tail. The tail must come all the way back up above the line.

The initial “ـلـ” begins the same way, but once you reach the line, curve into the connecting segment along the line.

To write the medial “ـلـ”, start from the connecting segment, draw up, then trace back down to the line into the next connecting segment as shown.

When “ل” is followed by the letters “خ“ ”ح“ ”ج”, its shape is different in handwriting than what is normally seen in print. You begin writing from the same point but rather than go all the way down to the line, you stop at the height of the “ـحـ” and curve into it “ **لحـ**”.

To write the final “ـل”, drop the connecting segment and draw a big, rounded tail. Be sure to dip well below the line and finish the hook by returning the pen to the line again. (Watch the video)

Writing (لا = ا + ل)

The combination of the letter “Laam” “ل” followed by “Alif” “ا” has two meanings: the linguistic definition, which means “no,” and the common usage to negate the present tense. There is a specific symbol that must be used to write these two letters whenever they occur in this order, both when written in a word or separately (لا = ا + ل). This shape varies slightly in print and handwriting styles.

This is the form "لا" you see in print. However, in handwriting, it has a different form - it has two separate strokes. When handwriting, start as you would write the initial connected “ـلـ”.

When you reach the line, extend it slightly, then make a slanted “Alif” stroke into the corner of “ـلـ” to get “لا”.

Remember that “Alif” does not connect to the following letters; therefore “لا” does not connect to following letters.

ل لا لا لا لا

The letter ل in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـل	ـلـ	لـ	ل

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Laam

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 6.1.1

The ‘’Dhama” on لُ is long or Short vowel?

Answer available at the end of this section.

The letter Meem م

The articulation point of the letter م is the lips. The articulation point is the lips, like with the letters “ب” and “و”. However, the

letter م is articulated by closing the two lips together and accentuated by the nasal passage. The letter corresponds to the English "*M*" as in "may". م is pronounced "mm". The letters "**ب**" and م emerge from pressing the lips together. However, the consonant "**و**" emerges by opening the lips slightly and bringing in the sides to form an "O" shape. (See figure 6.1.3)

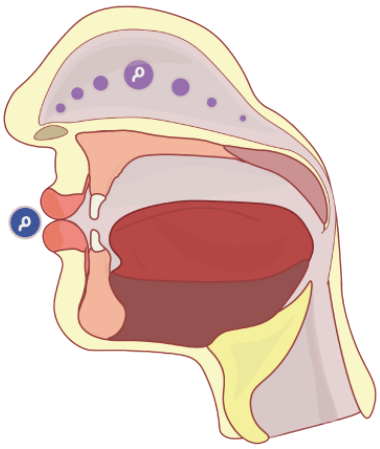


Figure 6.1.3: CCross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter م

The tables below show the sound of the letter Meem with short and long vowels.

The letter م with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
مْ	مُ	مِ	مَ

The letter م with long vowels

The long vowel "و " oo	The long vowel "ي'' ee	The long vowel "ا" aa
مو	مي	ما

The letter م is a connecting letter. Therefore, to write an independent م, begin on the line and draw a small, round loop over and around to the right, continue along the line a short distance, then make a curve and draw the tail straight down, well below the line.

There are two common styles of writing the initial "**مـ**". It may be looped up and over, like the independent م, or looped from underneath in the opposite direction. Once you have closed the loop, continue on into a connecting segment.

When writing the initial "**مـ**" followed by the letters "ح" ,"ج", or "خ", remember to draw the loop well above the line so that you can continue directly into the following letter, like the word مجد.

The medial "ـمـ" should always loop down from the connecting segment so that it looks different than the loop of the letter "ـفـ". The connecting segment often rests slightly above the line when it precede by ح ,ج, or خ.

The final "ـم" must be looped down from the top. Starting from the connecting segment, continuing into the loop, then circling down and around to the right, making a full loop, and finally continuing into the tail. (Watch the video)

The letter م in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـم	ـمـ	مـ	م

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Meem

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 6.1.1

True or Falls

The letter م is one of the two way connectors.

Answer available at the end of this section.

The letter Haa هـ

The letter Haa "هـ" presents the English sound "*h*", as in house. The articulation point of the letter "هـ" is the deepest part of the throat and the furthest away from the mouth (closest to the chest). You should remember that "هـ" is a different than "ح". The sound of "هـ" does not require the use of the throat muscles, whereas "ح" is pronounced deep in the throat and has a light, raspy sound, and involves the usage of the throat muscles. (See figure 6.1.4)

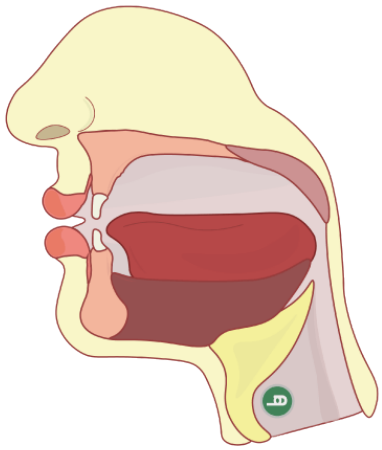


Figure 6.1.4: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter هـ

The tables below show the sound of the letter Haa with short and long vowels.

The letter هـ with the short vowels and sukoon

Sukoon	Dhama	Kasra	Fataha
هْ	هُ	هِ	هَ

The letter هـ with long vowels

The long vowel "ا" aa	The long vowel "ي" ee	The long vowel "و" oo
هـا	هـي	هـو

The letter "هـ" is a connecting letter. The shape of the letter "هـ" is both its independent and initial form. You begin slightly above the line and draw a large loop, first upward and then down to your right and back up. The outer loop should be larger than the inside one. The exact shape of the letter "هـ" can vary according to individual style and print type, from printed to a rounded oval.

When you reach the beginning of the loop, continue down to the line and into the connecting segment, ensuring that the big loop is closed. The middle position "هـ" has two main variations. The first is more common in print," ـهـ", consisting of two vertical loops, one above and one below the line. The second is more commonly found in handwriting and is written in one stroke as a sharp dip below the line "ـهـ". To write the final "ـه" connected with a preceding letter, start from the connecting segment and draw a short line up, and then loop around into a flat oval.

The letter هـ in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـه ه	ـهـ	هـ	ه

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Haa

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 6.1.1

The Haa in the shape ـه is in medial or final?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Query 6.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Answers

Exercise 6.1.1

ـكـ

Exercise 6.1.1
Short vowel

Exercise 6.1.1
True

Exercise 6.1.1
Final

This page titled 6.1: Letters is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

6.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and say new vocabulary about the house parts.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary in this section

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Two story house		Single story / Two story	طابق (طابقين)

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Garden		Garden	حَديقة
 Room		Room	غُرفة

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 living room		Living room	غرفة جلوس
 TV		Television	تلفزيون

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Bedroom		Bedroom	غرفة نوم
 Restroom		Restroom	تواليت (مِرْحاض)

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Bathroom		Bathroom	حمَام
 Bed		Bed	سَرِير

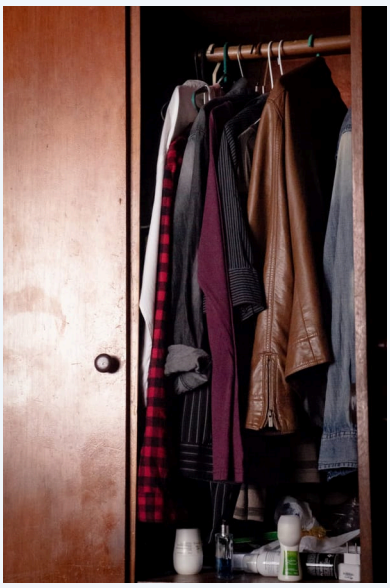
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Closet		Closet	خِزَانَة
 Office		Office	مَكتب

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Chair		Chair	كُرسي
 window		Window	شُبَاك

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Kitchen		Kitchen	مَطبخ
 Refrigerator		Refrigerator	ثَلاجة (براد)

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Stove		Stove	فرن
 Table		Table	طاولة

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Food		Food	طَّعام
 No		No	لا

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Yes		Yes	نعم
 Red		Red	أحمر

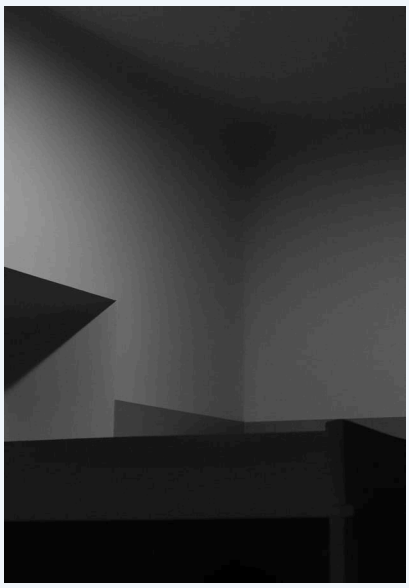
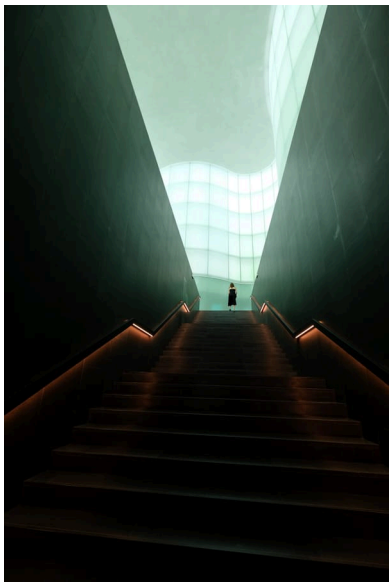
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Gray		Gray	رمادي
 Pink		Pink	زهري

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Work		Work	عَمَل
 to want		To want He wants	أَرَاد/ يُرِيدُ

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Close/ Near		Close/ near	قَريب
 Far/ Away		Far/ away	بَعيد

Activities

Listen to the vocabulary above, try to pronounce each word several times and learn its meaning.

What is the word in Arabic for the following:

Exercise 6.2.1

Living room

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.2.1

Food

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.2.1

Garden

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.2.1

Refrigerator

Answer available at the end of this section.

This is an image of:

Exercise 6.2.1



Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.2.1



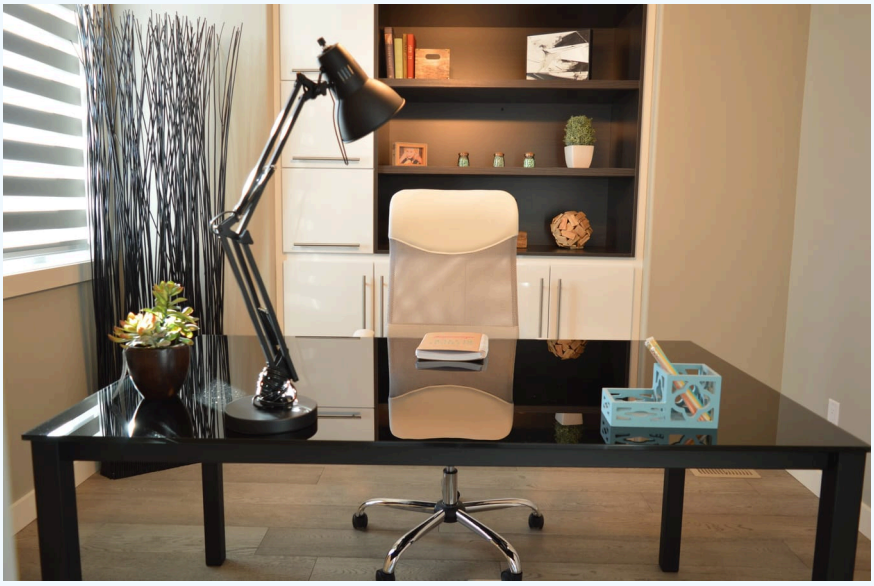
Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.2.1



Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.2.1



Answer available at the end of this section.

Query 6.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Answers

Exercise 6.2.1

غرفة جلوس

Exercise 6.2.1

طعام

Exercise 6.2.1

حديقة

Exercise 6.2.1

ثلاجة (براد)

Exercise 6.2.1

كرسي

Exercise 6.2.1

Exercise 6.2.1

مطبخ

Exercise 6.2.1

مكتب

This page titled 6.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

6.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Name different rooms and household items in your home.
- List the furniture and the household items in your home.
- Describe your house or apartment.

Dialogue 1

Watch the video about a dialogue between a brother and his sister. The sister entered the house and began asking questions to her brother. Read and listen to their conversation.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialog 1

English	Dialogue
Hello Tarek, where are you?	ليلى: مرحباً طارِ, أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟
Hello, I am in my office.	طارِق: أَهلاً, أَنا فِي غُرفَةِ مَكْتِبي.
What are you doing?	ليلى: مَاذا تَعْمَلُ؟
I am studying.	طارِق: أَنَا أَدرُسُ.
Where is my father	ليلى: أَيْنَ أَبي؟
He is watching TV in his room.	طارِق: يُشاهِدُ التِّلفازَ فِي غُرفَتِهِ.
Where is my mother?	ليلى: أَينَ أُمي؟
She is in our house's garden with my grandfather and grandmother.	طارِق: هِيَ فِي حَدِيقَةِ بَيْتِنا مَع جَدّي وَجَدّتي.
Where is my brother Hasan?	ليلى: أَيْنَ أَخي حَسَن؟
Hasa is drinking green tea in the kitchen.	طارِق: حَسَن في الْمَطْبَخِ يَشربُ شاياً أخضراً.
Let's drink green tea with Hasan.	ليلى: هَيَّا نَشْرَبُ شَاياً أخضَراً معَ حَسَن
Yalla, to the kitchen.	طارِق: يَلاَّ، إِلَى المَطبَخِ.
Ok	ليلى: حَسَناً.

Exercise 6.3.1

أَيْنَ طارق؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.2

أَيْنَ حَسَن ؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.3

مَاذا يَشْرَبُ حَسَن؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Dialogue 2

Watch the dialogue between two friends. In this dialogue, Maysaa's friend Sally visits her friend Maysaa for the first time. Read and listen to their talk.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialog 2

English	Dialogue
Hello Maysaa!	سَالِي: مَرحَباً مَيْساء
Hello Sally!	مَيْسَاء: أَهلاً, سَالِي.
How are you?	سَالِي: كَيْفَ حَالُكِ؟
I'm fine, thank God!! come on in.	مَيْساء: بِخَيْر, وَالحَمْدُ لله ! تَفَضَّلي.
Your house is beautiful "Maa Shaa Allah." Is your house new?	سَالِي: بَيتُكِ جَميلٌ مَا شاءَ الله. هَلْ بَيتُكِ جَدِيدٌ؟
Thank you, yes, it is new.	مَيْسَاء: شُكرًا، نَعَم إِنَّهُ جَدِيدٌ.
Who lives with you?	سَالِي: مَنْ يَسْكُنُ مَعكِ؟
My father, mother, and Brother. Do you live in a house?	مَيْسَاء: أَبِي وَأُمِّي وَأَخِي، وَأنتِ هَلْ تَسكُنينَ في بَيْتٍ أَو فِي شَقَّةٍ؟
No, I live in an apartment	سَالِي: أَنا أَسْكُنُ في شَقَّةٍ.
Is your apartment big, or small?	مَيْسَاء: هَلْ شَقَّتُكِ كَبيرةٌ أَوْ صَغيرَةٌ ؟
My apartment is small.	سَالِي: شَقَّتي صَغيرةٌ.
Who lives with you?	مَيْساء: مَنْ يَسْكنُ معكِ ؟
I live with my husband Jack.	سَالِي: أَسْكنُ مَعَ زَوْجِي "جاك"
Where is your apartment?	ميساء: أينَ شَقَّتُكِ؟
In Los Angeles city, on Broadway street.	سَالِي: فِي مَدينةِ "لوس أَنجولوس" فِي شَارِعِ "برودوي
Is your apartment nearby or far from your university?	مَيْسَاء: هَلْ شَـقَّتُكِ قَريبةٌ أَو بَعيدَةٌ مِنْ جامعَتِكِ؟
My apartment is nearby your university.	سَالِي: شَقَّتي قَريبَةٌ مِنْ جامِعَتي
Maa Shaa Allah!	مَيْسَاء: مَا شَاءَ الله

Exercise 6.3.1

هَل بيتُ مَيساء جَديدٌ وجَميل ؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.2

مَنْ يِسكنُ مَعَ مَيْسَاء؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.3

مَنْ هو "جاك"؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.4

أَيْنَ تَسْكُنُ سَالي؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Query 6.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading

Sally Khalil is writing an email to her mother describing her new apartment that is near the university, and attaching a picture of it to the email.

Arabic Text

السَّلامُ عَلَيْكُمْ مَامَا

هَذِهِ صُورَةُ غُرْفَتِي، أَسْكُنُ فِي شَقَّةٍ صَغيرَةٍ وَجَديدَةٍ قريبَةٍ مِنَ الجَامِعَةِ.

فِي شَقَّتي مَطْبَخٌ صَغيرٌ. فِيهِ ثَلَّاجَةٌ وَفِرْنٌ أَبْيِضٌ وَطاوِلَةٌ صَغيرَةٌ وَكُرسيٌ. فِي غُرفَةُ الجُلوسِ تِلْـفِازٌ كَبيرٌ وَمَكتَبٌ وَشُبَّاكٌ . وَفِي غُرفَةِ النَّومِ سَريرٌ وَخِزانَةٌ وحَمّامٌ

أَنا أُحِبُّ شَقَّـتي والْحَمْدُ لله.

عُنْوانُ شَقَّتي الجَدِيدَة: عِشْرونَ (20) شَارِعُ "برود وي", مَدينةُ لُوس أَنجولوس، وِلايَةُ كَاليفُورنيا. مَعَ السَّلامَةِ

اِبْنَتُكِ سَالي

English Text

Alsslam Aliekoum Mom.

This is my apartment picture. I live in a small, new apartment close to the university. In my apartment, there is a small kitchen. It has a refrigerator, a white oven, a small table, and a chair. In the living room there is a large TV, a desk, and a window. And the bedroom has a bed, a closet, and a bathroom. Thank God, I love my apartment.

My new apartment address: Twenty (20) Broadway Street, city of Los Angeles, California state. Goodbyes,

Your daughter Sally.

Exercise 6.3.1

أَيْنَ تَسْكنُ سَالي ؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.1

هَلْ شَقَّةُ سَالي قَريبةٌ أَو بَعيدَةٌ مِن الجَامعة؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.3.1

مّا عُنوانُ شَقَّةُ سَالي؟

Answer available at the end of this section.

Activity # 1

Take turns and read the text aloud with your partner.

Activity # 2

Your family moved to a new house. You called your grandmother on Face-Time. As both of you are on video, you give her a tour around the house and talk to each other. Describe the house to your grandmother, show her the rooms and the furniture, and give her the house address.

Answers

Exercise 6.3.1

فِي غُرفَةِ مَكتَبِه.

Exercise 6.3.2

فِي المَطْبَخ.

Exercise 6.3.3

شاي أَخضَر.

Exercise 6.3.1

نَعم، بيتُ ميساء جَديدٌ وَجَميل.

Exercise 6.3.1

أُمها وَأبَوها وَأَخوها.

Exercise 6.3.3

هُوَ زَوجُ سالي.

Exercise 6.3.4

فِي مَدينةِ "لوس أنجلوس" فِي شارع "برود وي".

Exercise 6.3.1

تَسْكنُ في شَقَّة صَغيرة

Exercise 6.3.1

قَريبةٌ مِن الجامِعة

Exercise 6.3.1

عِشرون (20) شَارع "برودوي", مَدينةُ لُوس أنوجلوس، وِلايةُ كاليفورنيا

This page titled 6.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

6.4: Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام, New Verbs and Colors

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about present-tense verb conjugation.
- Ask questions with interrogative words.
- Differentiate between masculine and feminine colors.

Conjugation

Conjugating the verb to work (عَمَل) in present-tense for all the different subject pronouns.

Conjugation

Meaning	Suffix/Prefix for conjugating present tense	Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	Gender & Number of people
I work	أَعْمَلُ	أنا	1st. Person Masculine/ Feminine
We work	نـعْمَلُ	نحنُ	1st. Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
You work	تَـعْمَلُ	أَنْتَ	2nd. Person Masculine/ Singular
You work	تَـعْمَلِـيـنَ	أَنْتِ	2nd. Person Feminine/ Singular
You work	تَـعْمَلُونَ	أَنْتُم	2nd. Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
He works	يَـعْمَلُ	هو	3rd. Person Masculine/ Singular
She works	تَـعْمَلُ	هي	3rd. Person Feminine/ Singular
They work	يَـعْمَلُونَ	هم	3rd. Person Masculine/ Plural

Conjugate the verbs

Conjugate the verb to want (أَرَادَ) in the present tense for all the different subject pronouns using the 1st. chart above, and try to read the word after each conjugating. Repeat this exercise several times using different the following verbs to study (دَرَسَ), and to watch (شَاهَدَ).

Choose the correct conjugation.

Exercise 6.4.1

توم ---------- اللغة العربية

يَدرس , تَدرس , دَرَسَ

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

نحنُ ---------- التلفزيون

يُشاهدون , يُشاهد , نُشاهد

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

جدّتي ---------- العصير

أُريد , تُريد , نُريد

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

أُختي ---------- قلم

تُريدُ ، يُريدُ ، يُريدون

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Dual "Al-muthanna" المثنى

Arabic grammar has singular, dual, and plural. Dual is used for any two things, while plural is used for three or more. Before using any of these formulas you must take into consideration whether the noun is feminine or masculine. When changing a masculine noun from singular to dual, you need to add the suffix Aan ـان or Ayn ـين at the end of masculine noun. While if the noun is feminine ending with Taa marbouta ة, you need to change the Taa marbouta ة to Taa Maftouha ت, then add the suffixes Aan ـان or Ayn ـين to feminine noun.

Changing a masculine noun from singular to dual

Masculine dual with the suffix Aan ـان or Ayn ـين	Singular noun
تلفزيون / تلفزيونان تلفزيونين	تلفزيون

Changing a feminine noun from singular to dual

feminine dual with the suffix Aan ـان or Ayn ـين	Singular noun
غُرفَة / غُرفَتان غُرفَتين	غُرفَة

Exercise 6.4.1

Change the word سَرِير to dual.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

Change the word خِزَانَة to dual.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام

In the Arabic language, interrogative words are among the important words that are used to inquire about things. And to achieve that, each interrogative should be used in its appropriate place. In this lesson we will learn how to use كَيفَ , أَينَ , أَيّ , مَاذا , هَل , مِن

Interrogative words

How to use them in questions	meaning	Interrogative words
كَيفَ حَالُكَ؟	How	كَيفَ
أينَ تَسكُنُ؟	Where	أَينَ
أيّ كِتاب؟	Which	أَيّ
ماذا تَدرسُ؟	What? (using verbs)	مَاذا (تستخدم مع الافعال)
هَل أنتَ طالب؟	For yes / no questions	هَل

How to use them in questions	meaning	Interrogative words
مِنْ أَيْنَ أنتَ؟	From where	مِنْ أَيْنَ

Choose the right Interrogative word

Exercise 6.4.1

فاطمة ؟ ----------

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

تعمل؟ ----------

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

أنتَ أستاذ؟ ----------

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 6.4.1

يومكَ؟ ----------

Answer available at the end of this section.

Colors

Colors

Meaning	Feminine	Masculine
White	بيضاء	أبيض
Black	سوداء	أسود
Blue	زرقاء	أزرق
Red	حمراء	أحمر
Green	خضراء	أخضر
Yellow	صفراء	أصفر

Meaning	Feminine	Masculine
Orange	برتقالية	برتقالي
Brown	بنية	بني
Grey	رمادية	رمادي

Activity Drag and Drop

Drag color cards to match them with the corresponding words in Arabic.

Query 6.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Drag color cards from the left to match them with the corresponding words in Arabic on the right.

Query 6.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Answers

Exercise 6.4.1

يَدرس

Exercise 6.4.1

نُشاهد

Exercise 6.4.1

تُريد

Exercise 6.4.1

تُريدُ

Exercise 6.4.1

سَرِيران or سَرِيرين

Exercise 6.4.1

خِزَانَتان or خِزَانَتين

Exercise 6.4.1

أينَ

Exercise 6.4.1

ماذا

Exercise 6.4.1

هَل

Exercise 6.4.1

كَيفَ

This page titled 6.4: Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام, New Verbs and Colors is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

6.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Yemen, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

Yemen

- Official Name: The Yemeni Republic- جمهورية اليمن
- Capital: Sanaa - صنعاء
- Population: 34.2 million
- Currency: The rial
- Continent: Asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة

Watch this movie and learn about Yemen.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Geographical location and flag

Yemen is considered one of the oldest centers of civilization in the ancient world located in Western Asia, on the southern end of the Arabian Peninsula, at the entrance to the Bab-el-Mandeb Strait, which links the Red Sea to the Indian Ocean (via the Gulf of Aden) and is one of the most active and strategic shipping lanes in the world. It borders Saudi Arabia to the north and Oman to the northeast and shares maritime borders with Eritrea, Djibouti, and Somalia. Yemen's climate is subtropical, dry, hot desert, with low annual rainfall and very high summer temperatures.



Yemen map; public domain

The flag of Yemen (Arabic: علم اليمن Alam al-Yaman)



Yemen flag

Most famous historical places in Yemen

Yemen is one of the most natural places in the world that has not been touched by civilization yet. Yemen is distinguished by its ancient cities with beautiful architecture and exceptionally attractive cultural areas, as well as sand beaches and mountains. One of the most heritage sites in Yemen are: Old Walled City of Shibām Ḥaḍramawt, Old City of Sana'a, Historic Town of Zabid, Socotra Archipelago. And the biggest Cities in Yemen are: Sana'a, Aden, Taiz, Al Hudaydah, Al Mukalla, Ibb, Dhamar, Sahar, Sayyan, Ash Shihr.

Historical Places	Video
 Shibām Ḥaḍramawt; CC BY-SA 3.0	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
 Old city of Sana'a; CC BY 4.0	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Historical Places	Video
 Zabid; CC BY-SA 3.0	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
 Socotra Archipelago; public domain	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Sana'a

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Famous Cities in Yemen

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Traditional Yemeni Food, and Clothes

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Clothes

- Headdresses in Yemen are very important accessories for men.
- The most popular are the "*turban*" and the "*Alqaweq*". (*Al-Amama* "turban" is a head covering and is in the form of a long piece of cloth that is wrapped around the head, and sometimes it is covered with a cover called the "*qawiq*" made of cloth, straw or bamboo, and worn by older and wealthier Yemeni.)
- "*Thoob*" is a loose ankle-length garment with long sleeves. *Thoobs* are white, beige, or brown.
- "*Futa*" is a wrap-around male skirt. It is an informal type of clothing.
- Traditional Yemeni shoes are made mostly of leather. The shoes of Yemeni men can be slippers or low shoes (with the back part).
- "*Jambiya*" is a ceremonial dagger. It is placed vertically at the center of a wide, ornate belt. "*Jambiya*" usually has a very beautiful sheath with exquisite carving, gems, precious metals, and ornamentations.
- The Yamani women's traditional clothing is bright, with a lot of jewelry, and embroideries.
- The most popular clothing is the "*Sana'ani*" curtain-style dress. It is a brightly colored square-shaped cotton cloth wrapped around the body.

Activities:

Query 6.5.1

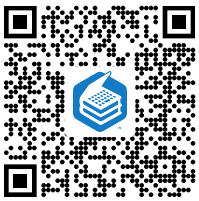
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 6.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 6.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Activity

Plan a trip to Yemen during summer break. List the cities and historical places you want to visit, ad the famous dishes you want to eat.

This page titled 6.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

- 3.5: Culture by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7: FOOD الطعام "AT-TAUAM"

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Identify الألف المقصورى
- Learn and say new vocabulary about the names of food and drinks.
- Shop at Middle Eastern food market
- Order food in an Arabic restaurant
- Identify Arabic propositions & negate the nominal sentence
- Learn about Libya, its Geographical location, its famous cities, its most famous artifacts, its traditional food, and clothes.

7.1: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة

7.2: Vocabulary

7.3: Dialogue and Reading

7.4: Prepositions حروف الجر

7.5: Culture

This page titled 7: Food الطعام "At-Tauam" is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

7.1: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type "Alif Maqsura" الألف المقصورة "ى"

تعريف الألف المقصورة ـى- ى

The Alif Maqsorah: is the "Alif" that is only written in the final position of the word in the form of Yaa ي, but without dots

Alif Maqsorah sounds as a long vowel "Alif."

Alif Maqsarah is strictly used at the end of the word and never comes at the beginning or in the middle of the word.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Alif Maksorah Forms

Arabic Letter Alif Maksorah Final Form ـى	Arabic Letter Aif Maksorah Isolated Form ى
يحيى - موسى- عيسى	هُدى - شَذى - نَدى

Activity 1

Identify the Arabic letter ى الألف المقصورة

Query 7.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 7.1: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

7.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

- In this section, you will be able to:
- Learn and say new vocabulary about the names of food and drinks.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
File:Red apples in a silver bowl.jpg تفاح		Apples	تفاح
 برتقال		Oranges	برتقال
 حليب		Milk	حليب
File:Eierdoos.JPG بيض		Eggs	بيض

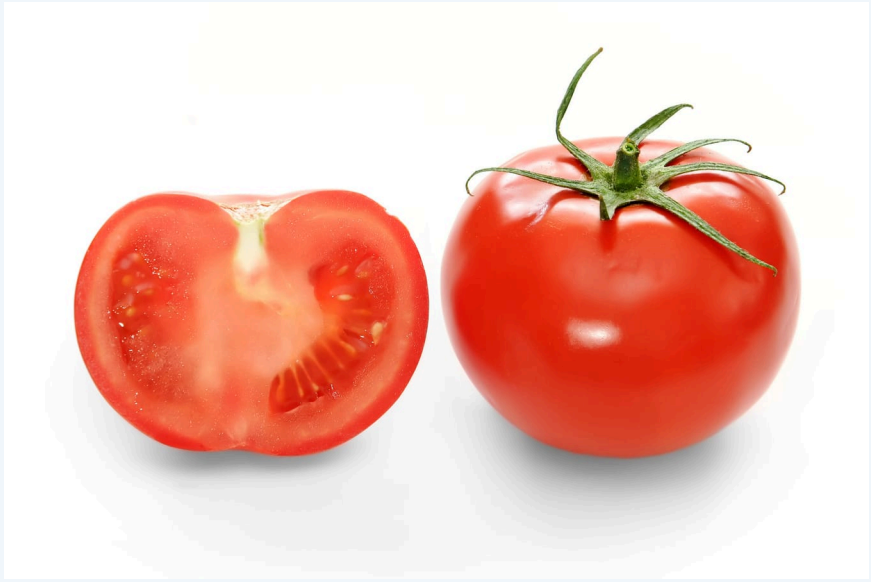
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 بطاطا		Potatoes	بطاطا
 طماطم		Tomatoes	طماطم
		Kilo	كيلو
File:Bananas.jpg موز		Bananas	موز
File:Veggies.jpg خضار		Vegetables	خضار

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
File:Romaine lettuce.jpg خس		Lettuce	خس
File:Culinary fruits front view.jpg فواكه		Fruit	فواكه
File:Fresh made bread 05.jpg خبز		Bread	خبز
File:Meat in Marketplace.jpg لحم		Meat	لحم
File:Chickens at the mercado.jpg دجاج		Chicken	دجاج
File:Mersin fish and meat markets in 2007 0592.jpg سمك		Fish	سمك
File:Sugar Cubes (7164573186) (cropped).jpg سكر		Sugar	سكر
File:Ordinary chickpeas in a ceramic bowl.jpg حمص		Chickpeas	حمص
File:Iraqi kebab كباب عراقي Baghdad.jpg كباب		Kabab	كباب
File:Sweets on Spice Bazaar in Istanbul 09.jpg حلوى		Sweet	حلّوى
File:Tom's Restaurant, NYC.jpg مطعم		Restaurant	مطعم
File:Corner store at Jinnah Market.jpg أشتري		I buy	أشتري
File:SAKURAKO - I want to buy this Ralph Lauren! (9645817078).jpg أريد		I want	أريد
File:Man about to eat a plate of pancakes.jpg أتناول		I have	أتناول

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
File:Juice on Health.jpg عصير		Juice	عصير
File:Türk Kahvesi - Bakir Cezve.jpg قهوة		Coffee	قهوة
File:Lipton-mug-tea.jpg شاي		Tea	شاي
File:Water Bottles Image.png ماء		Water	ماء
File:This is a duck cup.jpg كوب		A cup	كوب
File:Grindley serving dish 01.jpg صحن		A plate	صحن (طبق)
 ليس		I don't have	ليس عِندي
File:Flickr - schmuela - spice shop in the souk.jpg دكان		A shop	دكان (بقالة)
File:Arabic-carpet-cuisine-1253532.jpg أطبخ		I cook	أطبخ
File:Home from the store (6181658390).jpg أذهب		I go	أذهب

Activity 1

Look at the pictures below and choose the correct word that matches the meaning



Figure 1: free-photo tea-glass

Query 7.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Figure 2: fish

Query 7.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Figure 3: apples

Query 7.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 7.2.4

Activity 2

Match the word with the picture.

Query 7.2.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity 3

Exercise 7.2.1

connect the letters to make word, and then read the word:

ب + ا + ب + ك

ن + ا + ك + د

ب + هـ + ذ + أ

س + ي + ل

خ + ب + ط + أ

ل + و + ا + ن + ت + أ

ن + ح + ص

ب + و + ك

ي + ا + ش

ة + و + هـ + ق

ء + ا + م

ر + ي + ص + ع

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 7.2.1

كباب

دكان

أذهب

ليس

أطبخ

أتناول

صحن

كوب

شاي

قهوة

ماء

عصير

This page titled 7.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

7.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Shop at Middle Eastern food market
- Order food in an Arabic restaurant

Dialogue 1: In the Arabic Grocery Store "في دُكّانِ أَحْمَد"

Huda is going to the Arabic grocery store " دُكّان أَحمَد." Read the conversation between the Shopkeeper and Huda. Then practice it with your partner.



Figure 1: Market-CC-SA-3.0

Dialogue # 1: في دُكّانِ أحْمَد

English Dialogue	Arabic Dialogue
Assalmau Alakium	هُدى: السَّلامُ عَليكُم
Wa Alaikum Assalam, Welcome!	البائع أحَمَد: وَ عَليكَمُ السَّلام , أَهلاً و سَهلاً
Do you have red apples?	هُدى: هَلْ عِنْدَكَ تُفاحٌ أحْمَر؟
Yes, I have red and green apples.	البائِع أحمد:نَعَمْ عِندِي تُفَاح أَحْمَر وَ أَخْضَر
I want a kilo of red apples and a kilo of orange.	هُدى: أُرِيدُ كِيلو تُفَاح أَحْمَر وَكِيلو بُرْتُقَال
Thnak you, and do you have Arabic sweets?	البائِع أحمد:تَفَضَّلي التُّفَاح الأحْمر و البرتقال
Sorry, I don't have Arabic sweets.	هُدى: شُكراً وَ هَلْ عِنْدَك حَلوَ ى عَرَبِيَّة؟
Thank you!	البائِع أحمد: لا ، لَيْسَ عندي حلوى عربية
Good-Bye	هُدى: شُكراً
	البائِع أحمد: معَ السّلامَة

Dialogue 2: In Ali Baba Restaurant "في مَطْعَمِ علي بابا"

Laila is going to the Arabic restaurant "Ali Baba" "مطعم علي بابا" for lunch. Watch the video, and read the conversation between Laila and the waiter "Musa." Then practice it with your partner.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialogue # 2: في مَطْعَم علي بابا

English Dialogue	Arabic Dialogue
Hello!	موسى: مَرْحَباً
Welcome!	لَيْلى: أهْلاً وَسهْلاً
How are you?	موسى: كيْفَ الحال؟
Good, Alhamdu Lillah.	لَيْلى: بِخَيرٍ والحمدُ لله
What do you drink?	موسى: ماذا تَشْرَبين؟
I want to drink cold orange juice.	لَيْلى: أُريدُ عَصيرَ بُرتُقال بارِد
What do you want to eat?	موسى: ماذا تأْكلين؟
I want kabob plate, white rice, tabouleh, and a small plate of hummus.	لَيْلى: أُريدُ صَحْنَ كَباب وَرُز أَبْيَض وَتَبولَة وَصَحْنُ حُمص صَغير
do you want bread with the food?	موسى: هل تُريدينَ خُبْز مَعَ الطّعام؟
No, thanks.	لَيْلى: لا، شُكراً
Do you want Arabic sweets after the food?	موسى: هل تُريدينَ حَلوى بعدَ الطّعام؟
Yes, I want Arabic sweets after the food, thanks.	لَيْلى: نَعَم، أُريدُ حلوى عَربيَّة بعدَ الطعام، شكراً
You are welcome, five minutes.	موسى:عَفواً، خَمسَ دقائِق

Reading

Listen to the text. Then read and answer the questions.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

مَطعَمُ علي بابا

أَذْهَبُ إلى مَطْعَم علي بابا مَعَ أَبي وَأُخْتي وَأَخي. مَطْعَمُ علي بابا في شارِع بَغداد قريب مِنْ بَيْتي. أبي يُحِبُّ أَنْ يَأْكُلَّ لَحمَ دَجاجٍ وَكَبابٍ وأَرُزٍ أبْيَضٍ وَسَلَطَةٍ. أُخْتي تُحِبُ أنْ تَأْكُلَ لَحْمَ شاوُرْما، وتَـأْكُلُ صَحنَ حُمُّص وَخُبْز حار، وَتتَناولَ كوبَ عَصيرِ بُرتُقال بارِد. أَخي يريدُ سَمك حار وَأَرُز أصْفَر مَع خُضار، وَيُحِبُّ أن يَشْرَب كولا. بَعْدَ الأكلِ، نَشْرَبُ شاي أَحمر بِسُكَّر ونَأْكُلُ حَلوى عَرَبيَّة.

Activity

Answer the questions in Arabic:

ما عِنوان مطعم علي بابا؟

هل يُحِبُّ أبي لَحم دَجاج وكَباب؟

هل تُحبُّ أُختي لحم الشاورما؟

ماذا يُريدُ أخي؟

- Translate the text to English.

Activity # 3

Text your friend on her birthday, and invite her to a Lebanese restaurant. Greet her, send her the restaurant name/ address, and list some of the delicious food/ drinks in the restaurant.

This page titled 7.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

7.4: Prepositions حروف الجر

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and understand Arabic Propositions.
- Learn and use: "I don't have" ليس عِندي

Arabic Prepositions حُروفُ الْجَرّ called Horuf ul Jarr

Arabic prepositions حُروفُ الْجَرّ called Horuf ul Jarr- are particles. A preposition comes before a noun to complete the meaning.

Some common Arabic prepositions are: من, إلى,عن, على, في, بـ,

من - Miin From-

Exercise 7.4.1

Translate this phrase into Arabic using مِن

I am from Lebanon.

Answer available at the end of this section.

إلى- IIaa/ To

Exercise 7.4.2

Translate this sentence into Arabic using إلى

Ahmed goes to the restaurant

Answer available at the end of this section.

عن-Aan/ About

Exercise 7.4.3

Translate this sentence into Arabic using عن

I read a book about Aarbic food.

Answer available at the end of this section.

على- Aala/ On or Above

Exercise 7.4.4

Translate this Arabic sentence into English using على

الطعام على الطاولة.

Answer available at the end of this section.

في- Fee/ In or Into

Exercise 7.4.5

Translate this Arabic sentence into English using في

يوجد تفاح و برتقال في الثلاجة

Answer available at the end of this section.

بـ - Ba/ By, With, In or At

Exercise 7.4.6

Translate this Arabic sentence into English using الباء- ب

أشرب شاي بالسُّكر

Answer available at the end of this section.

Negating the nominal sentence ليس

Nominal sentences are negated with the word لَيْسَ.

For example, ليس عندي سيّارة (I don't have a car).

Answers

Exercise 7.4.1

أنا مِن لِبنان

Exercise 7.4.2

-يذهب أحمد إلى المطعم

Exercise 7.4.3

قرأت كتاباً عن الطعام العربي

Exercise 7.4.4

The food in on the table.

Exercise 7.4.5

There are some apples and oranges in the refrigerator

Exercise 7.4.6

I drink tea with sugar.

This page titled 7.4: Prepositions حروف الجر is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

7.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Libya, its Geographical location, its famous cities, its most famous artifacts, its traditional food, and clothes

Libya ليبيا

File:ليبيا (كتابة) تناظر (ambigram) ذهب.png

Libya; CC BY-SA 4.0

Facts to know about Libya

- Official Name: The state of Libya- دولة ليبيا
- Capital: Tripoli- طرابلس
- Population: 7,086,921 (2022)
- Currency:Libyan Dinar- دينار ليبي
- Continent: Africa- أفريقيا
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic- اللغة العربية الفصحى

1.1 Geographical Location & Flag

File:Flag of Libya.svg

Libyan Flag

File:Libya in its region.svg

Map; CC BY-SA 3.0

- Libya is a country located in North Africa.
- It is the fourth largest country in Africa and the Arab World.
- The capital is Tripoli, and the largest city.
- It's bordered by Egypt on the east, Algeria to the west, the Mediterranean Sea to the north, Chad to the south, and Sudan to the southeast.
- Libya has the tenth-largest oil reserves in the world.
- It has about three million people out of the seven million Arabs and Berbers.
- Most of Libyan region lies in the Sahara desert, and most of the population live in Tripoli, Benghazi, and other cities along the coast.
- Libya is well known for its ancient Roman and Greek ruins and Sahara desert beautiful landscapes.
- Libya has along and rich history, with influences from a variety of cultures, including Arab, African, and European.

1.2 Most Famous Cities

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

There are many major cities in Libya. Some of them are Tripoli, Benghazi, Misrata, Al Bayda, Ghat, Sirte, Ghadames, Sabratah, Sabha



Libyan Cities; CC BY-SA 3.0



Libyan Major Cities; public domain

Famous Cities in Libya

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Tripoli	طرابلس	tarabulus	 Tripoli; GNU Free Documentation License
Benghazi	بنغازي	banghazi	 Benghazi; public domain

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Misrata	مصراتة	misrata	 Misrata; CC BY-SA 4.0
Al Bayda	البيضاء	albayda'	 Al Bayda; public domain

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Sirte	سرت	sirat	 Sirte; CC BY-SA 3.0
Sabratah	صبراتة	sabrata	 Sabratah; CC BY-SA 4.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Sabha	سبها	subuha	 Sabha; CC BY-SA 3.0

1.3 Most famous artifacts

Tripoli Red Castle- Assai- Al- Hamra

The Tripoli Red Castle, as known as the *Assai Al Hamra*, is one of the major landmarks in the city Tripoli in Libya. It was built in 9th century by the Aghlabids, a Muslim dynasty that ruled over parts of North Africa and Sicily. It is called red because most of its parts are painted in red color. it is located in the northeastern of the city of Tripoli and overlooks Omar Al-Mukhtar and Al Fatah streets. It was built on the remains of Roman buildings, or temples. it was built to defend the city from outsiders. the castle is a popular attraction and is considered a symbol of the city's rich history.

File:Red Castle Of Tripoli.jpg

Red Castle; CC BY-SA 4.0

Ghadames City

Ghadmaes city is called " the pearl of the desert" for its outstanding architectural design. It is one of the oldest and most notable Saharan cities in the Arab world. It has been the shining role and peaceful center in the cultural and economic life of the region. It was occupied by many people, including Phazaniis, Romans, Byzantines, Christianity, Islamic conquests, Ottoman empires, and the European occupation in the 19th century and during the colonial period and World War ll.

File:Park al touta in ghadames city.jpg

Ghadmanes City; CC BY-SA 4.0

Leptis Magna

Leptis Magna was the largest city of the ancient region of Tripolitania, located on the North African coast of the Mediterranean Sea in present Libya. It was a Phoenician city and one of the most attractive cities of the Roman Empire, with its magnificent public monuments, harbors, marketplace, stores, and suburban regions.



Leptis Magna; CC BY-SA 2.0

Ptolemais

Ptolemais is an ancient city located along the Mediterranean coast of Libya. It is considered one of the five most important cities that established Pentaploi. it represents the distinctive regional cultural traditions created by diverse ethnicities and cultures that made up the region's social fabric, particularly Greek, Egyptian, Roman, Libyan, Byzantine, and Islamic. It is a little jewel of a historical spot and an important port in Libya. Its ancient remains and ruins are in modern Libya called Tolmeita.

File:Ptolemais (5283376622).jpg

Ptolemais; CC BY 2.0

Roman Sabratha

Sabratha was one of the major ports of Roman Tripoli that had a strong business connection with North Africa. Originally, it was a Phoenician settlement. Then the Roman enlarged the city by building streets, commercial, temples, and administrative. Most notable features of Sabratha include: The theater, the forum, the temples, and the city baths.

File:Roman theatre, Sabratha, Libya.jpg

Roman Sabratha; CC BY 2.0

1.4 Traditional Food & Clothing in Libya

Most Popular Food in Libya

Most Popular Food In Libya

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Couscous bil-bosla	كسكس بالبصل	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Couscous

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
makaruna imbaukha	مكرونة مبوخة	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Makaruna Imbaukha

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Shakshouka	شكشوك	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Shakshouka

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Hasa adas	حساء عدس	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Hasa adas

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Kufta bil batinjal	كفتة بالباذنجان	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Kufta bil batinjal; CC BY 3.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Basbousa	بسبوسة	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Basbousa; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Bazin	البازين	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Bazin; CC BY-SA 3.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Sfinz	سفنز	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Sfinz; CC BY-SA 4.0

Most Popular Clothing in Libya

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

In Modern days, Libyan people dress in different ways. in the urban ares, Libyans wear western clothing such as jeans and shirts, but on the special occasions, they wear their traditional clothes.

Women Traditional Dress

- Traditional Libyan women's clothing varies depending on the region, and the occasion.
- Some women wear bright colors like togas clothe with a blouse with loose sleeves, embroidered with beads, and silver/gold yaren with silk trousers closed at the ankle.
- The head is covered by a colorful cloth decorated with beads**.**
- The bridal dress for Libyan women is called *hasira* which is made of white silk, and embroidered with silver and gold thread. Also, they wear heavy neck golden pieces that reach to the knees, and gold cuffs adorn the wrists.
- Henna Day is essential before the wedding, where women from the community will be invited and gathered to have henna designs along with the bride.
- Traditional Libyan women's clothing is designed to be modest and conservative, while also showcasing the beauty and craftsmanship of the local culture.



Women Traditional Dress



Bridal Clothing



Heritage Dress



Women Traditional Dre

Men Traditional Cloth

- Libyan men prefer to wear their traditional costumes on special occasions such as Friday prayers, wedding ceremonies, holidays, and Ramadan.
- Traditional men's clothing are long "*tunic*" and long pants- "*sirwal*" and vest "*sadriyia*" is made from black silk and fastened at the front with buttons. The *thobe*, a long loose fitting garment with full sleeves and a collar, the bisht, a long flowing cloak made from wool or camel hair, the agal, a type of headband or bandana worn around the head to hold the *ghutrah* in place.
- Libyan men prefer to wear their traditional costumes on special occasions such as Friday prayers, wedding ceremonies, holidays, and Ramadan.



Libyan Traditional Costume



Libyan Men in National Attire



Libyan Men in Traditional Dress

Activity

You traveled to Libya. And you went to a restaurant to eat. Share with your friends on your Instagram page the name of the restaurant and the food you ordered, and describe the restaurant and food. For example, beautiful, clean, delicious, and tasty.

This page titled 7.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

8: THE WEATHER الطقس "AT-TAUQES"

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the definite article in the Arabic language.
- Recognize the Moon and the Sun letters.
- Create a basic conversation related to the weather.
- Learn Adjectives and nouns agreement.
- Learn about Morocco culture, historical places, traditional food and clothes.

8.1: Adjectives in Arabic (Masculine and Feminine)

8.2: Vocabulary

8.3: Dialogue and Reading

8.4: The Arabic Definite Article (ال) لام التعريف

8.5: Culture

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 8: The Weather الطقس "At-tauqes" is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

8.1: Adjectives in Arabic (Masculine and Feminine)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Use the adjective in Arabic in masculine and feminine forms.
- Learn adjectives agreement in Arabic.

Adjectives in Arabic

What is an adjective?

An adjective is a word that describes a noun, and it is called صِفَة (Sifah) in Arabic. Adjectives in Arabic have both masculine and feminine forms. The singular feminine form is the same as the masculine form, but with تَاء مَرْبوطَة (Taa Marbouta) added to the end. Study the example box.

Example 8.1.1

Read this adjective in the masculine form:

بَارِدٌ

Read the same adjective in the feminine form:

بَارِدَةٌ

Learn Feminine Adjectives

You learned more than twenty adjectives in this lesson and the previous sections. You will learn these adjectives in both forms (masculine and feminine).

In this table, you will read, listen to the adjectives in the masculine and feminine forms, and review the meaning in English. Also, you listen to the audio to hear the adjective in the masculine and feminine forms without the ending accents (Tashkeel) of the Tanween.

Adjectives in masculine and feminine forms

The meaning in English	Listen to the Audio of the masculine and then feminine adjective without the Tanween at the end	The Adjective in the Feminine Form	The Adjective in the masculine Form
Cold		بَارِدَةٌ	بَارِدٌ
Hot		حَارَّةٌ	حَارٌّ
New		جَدِيدَةٌ	جَدِيدٌ
Dry		جَافَّةٌ	جَافٌّ

The meaning in English	Listen to the Audio of the masculine and then feminine adjective without the Tanween at the end	The Adjective in the Feminine Form	The Adjective in the masculine Form
Pretty		جَميلَةٌ	جَميلٌ
Ugly		قَبيحَةٌ	قَبيحٌ
Many		كَثيرَةٌ	كَثيرٌ
Few		قَليلَةٌ	قَليلٌ
High		عَاليَّةٌ	عَاليٌّ
Low		مُنْخَفِضَةٌ	مُنْخَفِضٌ
Clear		صافيَّةٌ	صافيٌّ
Cloudy		غائِمَةٌ	غائِمٌ
Rainy		مُمْطِرَةٌ	مُمْطِرٌ
Sunny		مُشْمِسَةٌ	مُشْمِسٌ
Moderate		مُعْتَدِلَةٌ	مُعْتَدِلٌ
Frozen		مُتَجَمِّدَةٌ	مُتَجَمِّدٌ
Windy		عاصِفَةٌ	عاصِفٌ
Warm		دافِئَةٌ	دافِئٌ
Foreigner		أَجْنَبيَّةٌ	أَجْنَبيٌّ

Arabic Agreement in Arabic

Adjectives in Arabic follow the noun and must agree with it in definiteness or indefiniteness, singular, dual or plural, gender, and case.

Example 8.1.2

Check this phrase: بَيْتٌ كَبيرٌ

The noun is بَيْتٌ

The adjective is كَبيرٌ

Solution

The adjective followed the noun in indefiniteness, number (singular), case, and gender.

Arabic Adjectives for Colors

Some adjectives do not follow the rule of adding (Taa Marbouta) to become feminine. Some colors end with the letter Yaa "ي" and do not start with Hamza, like the color brown: بُنيّ. The color لَوْن can be feminine by adding (Taa Marbouta): بُنِيَّة. However, it is not the case for colors أَلْوان that start with hamza on the Alif "أ." The color can be formulated by taking the hamza and the Alif and replacing them at the end of the word, such as: أَحْمَر - حَمْراءٌ

Example 8.1.3

The masculine form of the color white in Arabic is: أَبْيَض

The feminine form of the color white is:

أَبْيَض (take away the hamza and the Alif)

بْيَض (take off the sukoon and the begriming and replace it with Fataha)

Add Alif and hamza to the end of the word: بَيْضاء

Learn Feminine Colors

You learned more than ten colors in the previous sections. You will learn these colors in both forms (masculine and feminine).

In this table, you will read, listen to the adjectives in the masculine and feminine forms, and review the meaning in English. Also, you listen to the audio to hear the colors in the masculine and feminine forms without the ending accents (Tashkeel) of the Tanween.

Colors in Masculine and Feminine

The meaning in English	Listen to the Audio of the masculine and then feminine adjective without the Tanween at the end	The Adjective in the Feminine Form	The Adjective in the masculine Form
white		بَيْضاءٌ	أَبْيَضٌ
black		سَوْداءٌ	أَسْوَدٌ
red		حَمْراءٌ	أَحْمَرٌ
green		خَضْراءٌ	أَخْضَرٌ
blue		زَرْقاءٌ	أَزْرَقٌ
yellow		صَفْراءٌ	أَصْفَرٌ
gray		رَماديَّةٌ	رَماديٌّ
brown		بُنِّيَّةٌ	بُنِّيٌّ
pink		زَهْريَّةٌ	زَهْريٌّ

Activities

Match the correct cards together by their sounds, picture, and meanings.

Query 8.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Drag the words into the correct boxes.

Query 8.1.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Adjectives and Opposites

Query 8.1.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 8.1: Adjectives in Arabic (Masculine and Feminine) is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

8.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and say new vocabulary about the weather, and seasons.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Sun; CC BY-SA 2.0		A su The s
 Rain; (CC0 1.0) Universal		Rai The r

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Cloud; GNU Free Documentation License		Clou The cl
 Snow; CC0 Public Domain		Sno The s
 Wind; (CC0 1.0) Universal		A wi The w

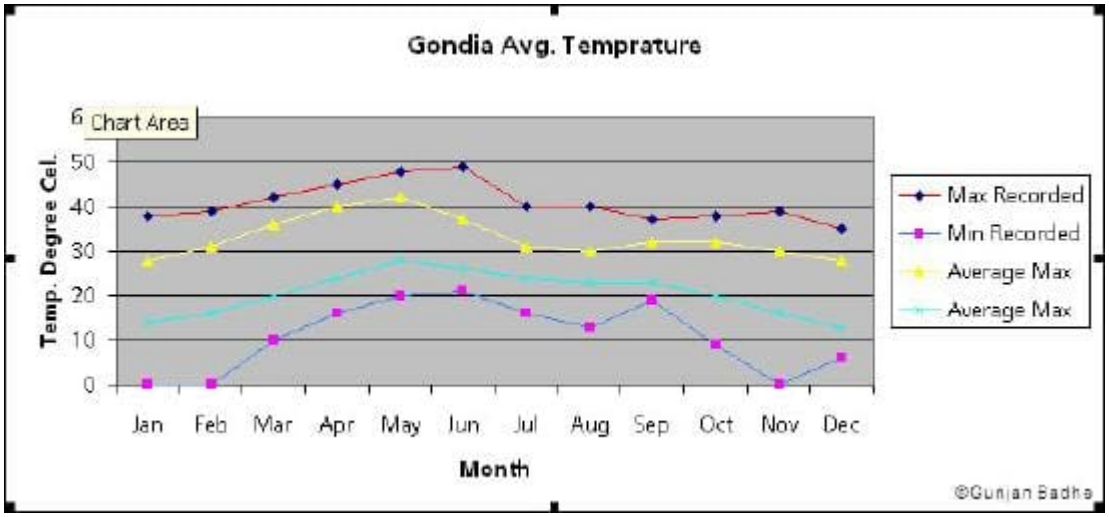
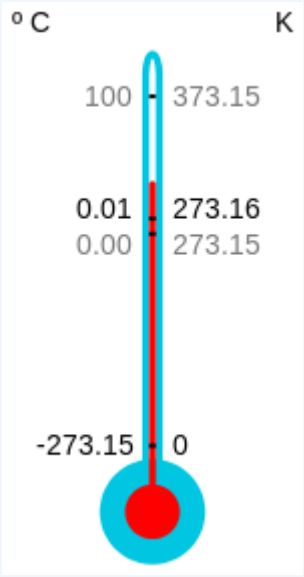
Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Weather; CC BY-SA 4.0		Weat The we
 Temperature; CC BY 3.0		Temper
 Celsius; CC BY-SA 4.0		Celsi

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 (source)		A gi The g
 Eid/ holiday; CC BY-SA 4.0		A holi A fea The ho The fe
 Warm; CC BY 2.0		War (adjec

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Hot; CC BY 2.0		Ho (adjec
 Cold; CC BY-SA 3.0		Col (adjec
 Cloudy; CC BY-SA 4.0		Clou (adjec

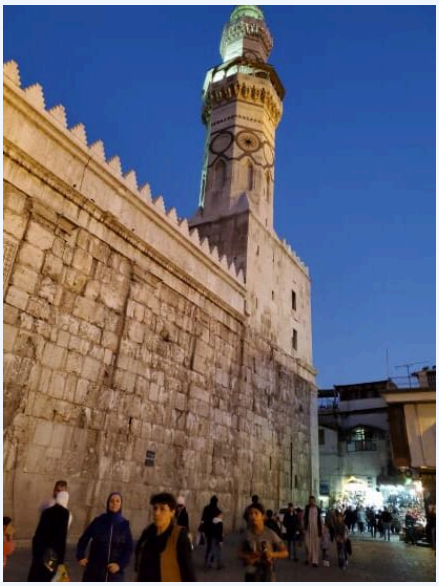
Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Clear; CC BY-SA 4.0		Clea (adjec
 Moderate		mode mil mod reason

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Windy; CC BY-SA 3.0		Win (adjec
 (source)		Hig (adjec

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Low: (CC BY-SA 4.0)		Lo (adjec
 Frozen; CC0 Public Domain		Froz (adjec
 Dry by Vyacheslav Argenberg; CC BY 4.0		Dry (adjec

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Many; CC BY-SA 4.0		mar muc numer plent (adjec
 Few		few littl sma (adjec
 Sunny		Sunı (adjec

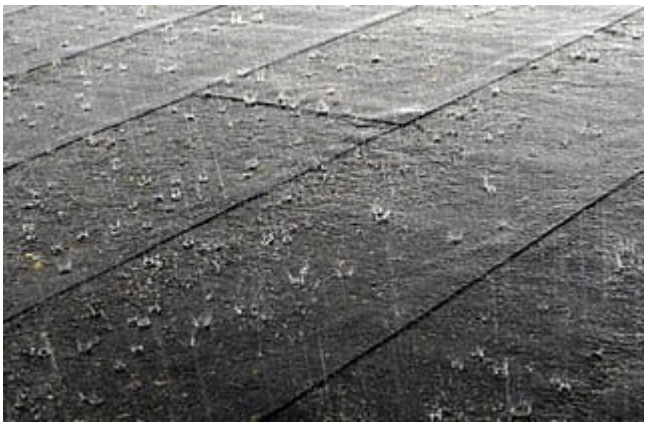
Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Rainy		Rain (adjec
 (source)		Nic beaut love pret (adjec
 Ugly; CC BY-SA 4.0		ugl unsig (adjec

Image	Pronunciation	Mean
 Sometime; CC0 Public Domain		somet (adve
 Very; CC0 Public Domain		ver so quit (adve

Seasons

Seasons

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Semester		Season Semester Class Division	فَـصْلٌ الْفَصْلُ
 Four Seasons; CC BY-SA 3.0		Four seasons	الْـفُصولُ الْأَرْبَعَةِ
 Summer; CC BY-SA 3.0		Summer	صَيْفٌ الصَّـيْـفُ فَصْلُ الصَّيْفِ

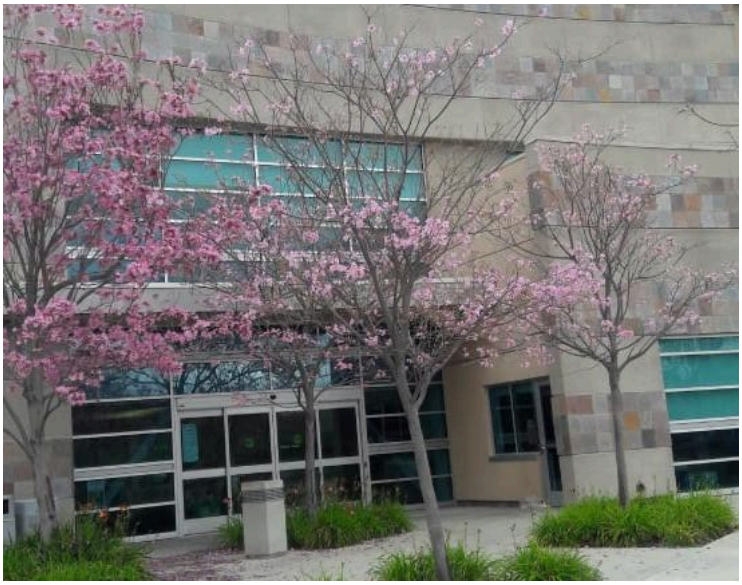
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Winter		Winter	شِتاءٌ الشِّــتاءُ فَصْلُ الشِّــتاءِ
 Spring		Spring	رَبيعٌ الرّبيعُ فَصْلُ الرَّبيعِ

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Fall		Fall	خَريفٌ الْخَريفُ فَصْلُ الْخَريفِ

Months

Months of the year

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Happy New Year		Year

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Calendar		Mont
 January		Janua

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 February		Februa
 March		Marc

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 April		Apri
 May		May

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 June		June
 July		July

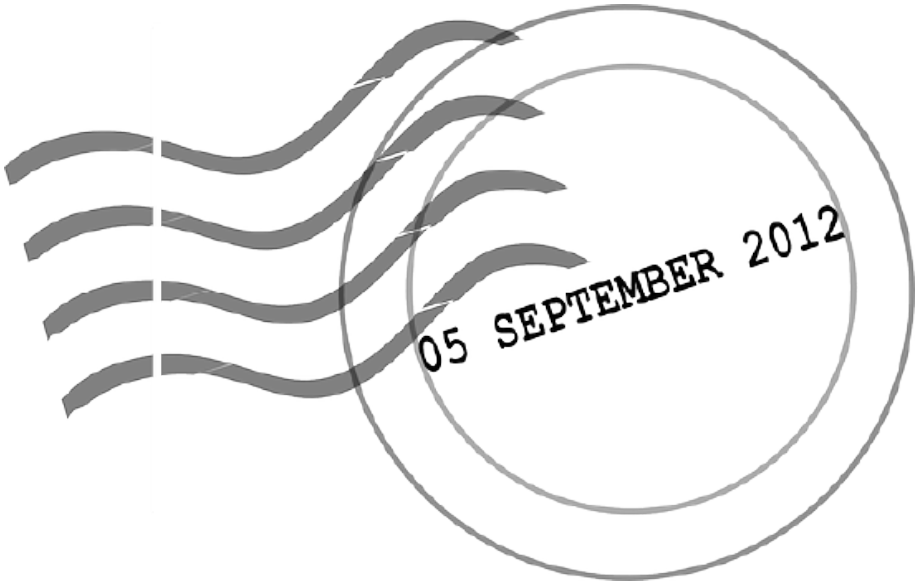
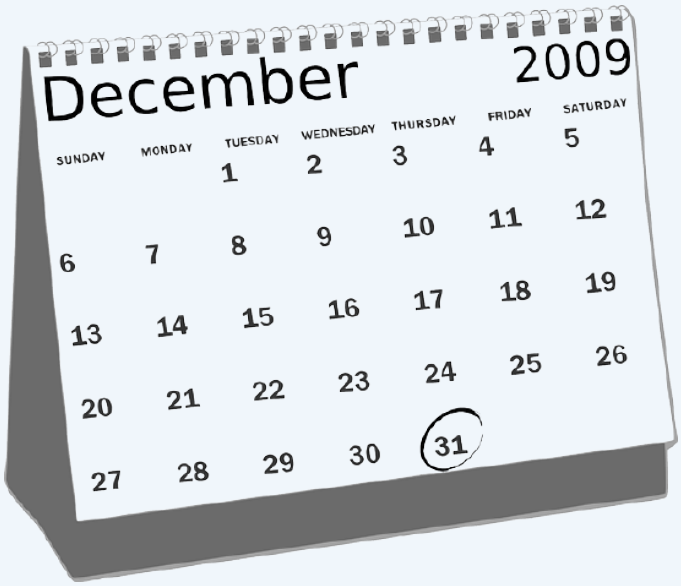
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Augusts; CC BY-SA 4.0		Augus
 September		Septem

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 October		Octob
 November		Novem

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 December		Decem

Activities

Practice learning the four seasons:

Query 8.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Match each picture and sound with the right Arabic word.

Query 8.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.2.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 8.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

8.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask for and give temperatures.
- Discuss the weather in Arabic.
- Understand weather reports.

Reading

Interactive Element 1

Listen, read the text, and then answer the question:

أَنا أُحِبُّ فَصْلَ الصَّيْف

عِيدُ مِيلادِي في شَهْرِ أُغُسْطُس في فَصْلِ الصَّيْفِ

أُحِبُّ الطَّقْسَ الْحار وَالشَّمْس في فَصْلِ الصَّيْفِ

Answer the questions:

- ماذا أُحب؟
- مَتى عيدُ ميلادي؟
- في أَيِّ شَهر عيدُ ميلادي؟
- هل أحِبُّ الطَّقس الحار أو البارِد؟
- Translate the text to English.

Interactive Element 2

Listen, read the text, and then answer the question:

صَديقي سامي يُحِبُّ فَصْلَ الْخَريف

عِيدُ مِيلادِ صَديقي سامي في فَصْلِ الْخَريف

عِيدُ مِيلادِهِ في شَهْرِ سَبْتَمْبَر

صَديقي سامي يُحِبُّ الطَّقْسَ البارِد وَ الغائِم في فَصْلِ الخَريف

الطَّقْسُ في فَصْلِ الخَريف بارِدٌ وَغائِمٌ وَمُمْطِرٌ أَحياناً

Answer the questions:

- مَنْ سامي؟
- مَتى عيدُ سامي؟
- هل يُحِبُّ سامي الطَّقسَ البارِد؟
- Translate the text to English.
- Copy the last sentence in your notes.

Interactive Element 3

Listen, read the text, and then answer the question:

أُخْتي سارَة تُحِبُّ فَصْلَ الشِّتاء جِداً

عِيدُ مِيلادِ أُخْتي سارَة في فَصْلَ الشِّتاء في شَهْرِ فِبْراير

عِيدُ الحُبِّ في شهْرِ فِبْراير

أُخْتي سارَة تُحِبُّ الطَّقْسَ البارِدِ والثَّلجَ والمَطَر في فَصْلِ الشِّتاء

Answer the questions:

- ما اِسْمُ أُخْتي؟
- مَتى عيدُ ميلادِ سارة؟
- مَتى عيدُ الحبِّ؟
- كيفَ الطَّقس في فصلِ الشِّتاء؟
- Translate the text to English.

Interactive Element 4

Read the text, and then answer the question:

آيات وَفَرَح وَمُحْسِن وَطارِق يُحِبون فَصلَ الرّبيعِ

آيات وَفَرَح وَمُحْسِن وَطارِق يُحِبون الطَّقْسَ اللَطيف في فَصل الرّبيعِ

هُمْ يُحِبونَ الشَمْسَ والطَّقسَ المُعْتَدِل والدّافي في شَهرِ مايو

عيدُ ميلادِ طارِق في شَهرِ أبْريل

طارِق يُحِبُّ هَديَّة كبيرَة وَجَميلَة في عيد ميلادِهِ

Answer the questions:

- ماذا يحبُّ آيات وفرح ومحسن وطارق؟
- كيف الطقس في فصل الرَّبيع؟
- متى عيدُ ميلادِ طارق؟
- ماذا يحبُّ طارِق؟
- Read the text.
- Translate the text to English.

Activity:

Write four sentences about your favorite seasons and use the lesson's vocabulary.

Reading

Listen to the text. You can read and translate the following text into English. Then, answer the questions that follow in complete sentences in Arabic.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

الطَّقْسُ في مَدينَةِ نيويورك

أُحِبُّ الطَّقسَ في مَدينةِ نيويورك، هو بَاردٌ جِداً بِسبب الثَّـلج. وَالطَّقسُ في فَصلِ الرَّبيعِ مُعْتَـدلٌ وَجَـميلٌ وَمُشْمسٌ وَدَرجةُ الحَرارةِ مُعْتَدلَة. ولا أُحِبُّ الطَّقسَ في فصْلِ الصَّيفِ في مَدينَةِ نيويورك، هُوَ حارٌ جداً، الرُّطوبَةُ عاليَةٌ جِداً وَمُمْطِر أَحياناً. أُحِبُّ الطقْس في فَصلِ الخَريفِ باردٌ قليلاً وَغائمٌ. أُحِبُّ ألوانَ الشَّجَرِ في فَصْلِ الخَريفِ.

Interactive Element 5

Answer the questions in Arabic:

- What city is the weather report for?
- What is the weather like in Spring?
- What is the weather like in Summer?
- What do I like about Fall?
- Translate the text to English.

Interactive Element 6

Watch the video and listen to the weather report in Kuwait city the capital of Kuwait.

الطَّقــْسُ في مدينةِ الكُويْتِ في الصباح مُشْمِسٌ وَ حارٌ جِداً وَدَرَجَة الحَرارة 40 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة ، وفي المَساء مُعْتَدِلٌ ودَرَجَةُ الحرارَة 30 درجة مئوية

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

الطَّقــْسُ في مدينةِ الكُويْتِ في الصباح مُشْمِسٌ وَ حارٌ جِداً وَدَرَجَة الحَرارة 40 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة.
وفي المَساء مُعْتَدِلٌ ودَرَجَةُ الحرارَة 30 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة.

Interactive Element 7

الطَّقــْسُ في مدينةِ الدَّوْحَة في الصباح مُشْمِسٌ وَ حارٌ جِداً وَدَرَجَة الحَرارة 42 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة ، وفي المَساء حارٌ وَغائِمٌ أَحياناً ودَرَجَةُ الحرارَة 33 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

الطَّقــْسُ في مدينةِ الدَّوْحَة في الصباح مُشْمِسٌ وَ حارٌ جِداً وَدَرَجَة الحَرارة 42 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة.
وفي المَساء حارٌ وَغائِمٌ أَحياناً ودَرَجَةُ الحرارَة 33 دَرَجَة مِئَوِيَة.

Interactive Element 8

Watch the video to learn more about the weather, months, and the four seasons. This video talks about the weather in Damascus.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Activities to practice the weather Vocabulary (Words)

Query 8.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Watch this interactive video, listen to the dialog, and try to answer the questions.

Query 8.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity#1

Ask your partner these questions:

Where does he/she live? Which state and city? Then ask him or her about the weather there.

Watch these videos to learn more about the weather in Arabic.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 8.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

8.4: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the definite article "الـ."
- Differentiate between the Moon and Sun definite articles "الـ."
- Differentiate between and form definite and indefinite nouns.

In this section, you will learn about the article specifying the nouns in Arabic. English has one definite article: the, which indicates a specific noun. Also, Arabic has one definite article: الـ,(AL). The definite article in Arabic is a prefix attached to the beginning of the noun. The definite article consists of two letters Hamza Alwasl and Laam with sukoon(الْـ). Hamza Alwasl is pronounced with fataha, and you do not write the Hamza on the top of the Alif to differentiate the regular Hamza from Hamza Alwasl. Hamza Alwasl is used to pronounce the letter with sukun at the beginning of the word, so it is a tool to help pronounce the silent letter at the beginning of the word. The definite article in Arabic is attached to singular, dual and plural nouns. The definite article in Arabic is called Laam At-ta'areef ("لام التعريف الـ").

Example 8.4.1

The building

In Arabic

الْبِنايَة

Definite vs. Indefinite

You will compare the definite article (الْـ) and the indefinite article Tanweenالتنوين.

Compare the definite article and indefinite article in Arabic

لام التعريف Definite Article	التّنوين Indefinite Article.
It is a prefix that is attached to the beginning of the noun	It is two identical short vowels comes at the end of the noun
It can accompany singular, dual, and plural nouns	It can accompany singular nouns and irregular plurals. It does not accompany dual and regular plurals nouns.
Indicates Hamza Alwasl and silent Laam	Indicates the short vowel and the sound of silent noon ()
It must be written or typed	It could be ignored in writing and sometimes in typing

Example 8.4.2

Listen to each word with a definite and an indefinite article.

Arabic words with definite and indefinite articles

Recording	Definite	Indefinite	Recording	Definite	Indefinite
	الْعِنْوانُ	عِنْوانٌ		الْأُسْرَةُ	أُسْرَةٌ
	الْهاتِفُ	هاتِفٌ		الْخَيْـرُ	خَيْرٌ
	الْحَمّامُ	حَمّامٌ		الْباصُ	باصٌ
	الْعَمَلُ	عَمَلٌ		الْخِزانَةُ	خِزانَةٌ
	الْقَهوَةُ	قَهْوَةٌ		الْكوبُ	كوبٌ

The pronunciation of the Definite Article الْ

The definite article in Arabic is pronounced in two ways and it depends on the letter that comes after it. The Laam in the definite article is pronounced silent Lamm if a group of letters follows, and it is called the Moon letters. The moon letters are 13 letters:

أ - ب - ج - ح - خ - ع - غ - ف - ق - ك - م - هـ - و - ي

However, the letter Laam will be dropped, and it won't be pronounced when it is followed by one of the sun letters. "Hamza Alwasl" همزة الوصل will be pronounced as أَ. The sun letters are 15 letters:

ت - ث - د - ذ- ر - ز - س - ش - ص- ض - ط - ظ - ل - ن

You should know the word sun in Arabic is شمس and the word moon is قَمَر. The word الشَّمْس is pronounced "أَشَّمْس" when it is attached to the definite article. The Laam in the definite article before the sun letters is mergerd with the first letter of the noun, and you pronounce the letter with the Shadda. The sun letter always carries a Shadda after the definite article الـ. Check these words:

Example 8.4.1

Listen to these words from right to left with the definite article الـ التعريف which is followed by a sun letter, and pay attention to the stressing sound with Shadda:

التِّلفِزْيونُ- الثِّيابُ - الدَّجاج - الزَّوج - السَّيارَةُ - الرَّماديُّ - الشّايُ - الصُّورَةُ - اللَّحمُ- النَّاديُّ

Important Rules:

You should always write the definite article الـ التعريف regardless if it is followed by a sun letter or a moon letter.

You should drop Hamza Alwasl when the definite article does not begin a sentence, and connect the end of the previous word with the beginning of the word that starts with the definite article. You drop Hamza Alwasl and connect the last letter to the proceed word to the silent Laam if the word starts with the moon letter. However, you drop Hamza Alwasl and the silent Laam if the word starts with the sun letter, and pay attention to the Shadda.

Check the examples:



Figure 8.4.1: The new home البيتُ الجديد



Figure 8.4.3: I like Chicken أحبُّ الدجاج



Figure 8.4.2: I like the hot chicken أحبُّ الدجاج الحار

Listen to the pronunciation of the nouns in Alphabetical orders, and pay attention to the differences between moon and sun letters:

Exercise

Drag and drop the letters in the right box. Differentiate between the sun and moon letter.

Query 8.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 8.4.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 8.4.8

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 8.4.9

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 8.4.10

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



Query 8.4.11

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.12

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.13

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.14

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.15

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 8.4: The Arabic Definite Article (ال) لام التعريف is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

8.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about Morocco, its geographical location, most famous cities, its most famous artifacts, its traditional food and clothes

Kingdom of Morocco - المملكة المغربية



Kingdom of Morocco
;
CC BY-SA 3.0

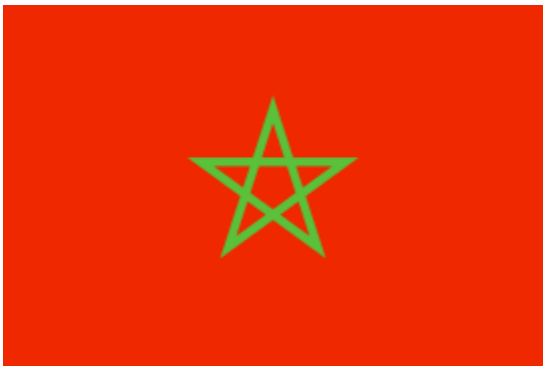
Facts to know about Kingdom of Morocco

- Official Name: Kingdom of Morocco- Al- Mamlakah Al-Maghribiyyah- المملكة المغربية
- Capital: Rabat- الرباط
- Population: 37.34 million(2021)
- Currency: Moroccan Dirham- الدرهم المغربي
- Continent: Africa- أفريقيا
- Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic & The Amazigh Language - اللغة العربية واللغة الأمازيغية

1.1 Geographical Location & Flag



Morocco Location; CC BY-SA 3.0



Moroccan Flag

Kingdom of Morocco is a country located in North Africa. It is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea to the north and the Atlantic Ocean to the west, and it shares borders with Algeria to the east and Mauritania to the south. Morocco has a rich history and culture, with influences from a variety of different civilizations, including the Phoenician, Romans, and Arabs. The country is known for its beautiful beaches, vibrant cities, and stunning landscapes, including the Atlas Mountains and the Sahara Desert. The official language of Morocco is Arabic, but French is also widely spoken. Amazigh Language is the other Official Language in morocco. Rabat is the capital of Morocco.

1.2 Most Famous Cities

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Morocco are considered the gate to North Africa. There are many amazing cities that are a mixture of African, European and Middle Eastern beautiful culture. some of these charming cities are Casablanca, Rabat, Fes, Marrakesh, and Meknes.



Morocco Map; public domain

Most Famous Cities in Morocco

City Name in English	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Rabat	الرباط	Alribat	 Rabat; public domain
Casablanca	الدار البيضاء	Al daar albaydaa	 Casablanca; CC BY-SA 2.0

City Name in English	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Fes	فاس	Fas	 Fes; CC BY-SA 3.0
Marrakesh	مراكش	Marakish	 Marrakesh; CC BY-SA 3.0
Meknes	مكناس	Miknas	 Meknes;CC BY-SA 3.0

1.3 Most Famous Artifacts

Morocco is well known to be home for many ancient cities, historic sites, and stunning places. Some of the amazing historic sites in Morocco are the following:

1. Citadel of Ait Ben-Haddou

The Citadel of Ait Ben-Haddou is located in the south of Moroccan town named Ouarzazate. It has been built in the 11th century and most of the buildings and maze-like streets are from the 17th century. It was an important trading center to connect ancient Sudan with Morocco on Saharan trade route.

2. Hassan Tower

The Hassan Tower in Rabat is a 140-foot red stone minaret that built during the reign of the Almohad Dynasty in 1184AD. It was believed to be one of the largest mosques on earth, but the mosque construction stopped when the sultan died and what was built of the mosque was demolished by an earthquake in 1755.

3. Volubilis

Volubilis is one of the most ancient Roman city near Meknes city that was built in 25BC. The population of Volubilis were a diverse residents including Syrians, Spaniards, Jews, and Africans. Triumphal Arch is one of the most famous Structure of Volubilis which was build for the Roman emperor at his death in 217AD.

4. El Badi Palace

El Badi Palace is considered one of the most spectacular royal palace in the world located in the centre of Marrakesh. it was built in the 16th century by sultan Ahmad al Mansur of the Saadi Dynasty. It took about 25 years to be built. This majestic palace was renowned for its opulence with hundreds of marble columns and intricate carving coverings its walls. However, over time it fell into disrepair and today only ruins remain. despite this, it is still a popular tourist attraction and is a symbol of thecity's rich history.

5. Essaouira

Essaouria is an amazing Moroccan city located on the Atlantic coast of Morocco. the city is influenced by different cultures over the centuries including Phoenician, Romans, and Portuguese. It is a Popular tourist destination with its charming streets, beautiful beaches, and vibrant arts and crafts scene.

1.4 Most Popular Food in Morocco

There are many popular foods in morocco. some of the most well-known dishes includes Couscous, Harrira, Pastilla, and B'stills

Most Famous Food in Morocco

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Couscous	كسكس	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Couscous; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Harrira	حريرة	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	File:حريرة.jpg Harrira; CC BY-SA 4.0
Pastilla	بسطيلة	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	File:بسطيلة د الحوت.jpg Pastilla; CC BY-SA 4.0
Tagine	طاجين	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	File:Tagín de sardiens al fron (1).png Tagine; CC BY-SA 2.0
Zaalouk	زعلوق	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	File:Zaaluk.jpg Zaalouk; CC BY 2.0

1.5 Traditional Clothing in Morocco

Women Traditional Clothing

Traditional women's clothing in Morocco varies depending on the region, but one common element is the use of bright, colorful fabrics and intricate embroidery. In some areas, women wear dresses or skirts with embroidered tops and headscarves, while in

others they may wear long, flowing djellabas- robe like garments- with intricate embroidery and beadwork. these garments are often made form locally-sourced materials such as wool or cotton, and the embroidery is typically done by hand using traditional techniques. Overall, traditional Moroccan Womens' clothing is designed to be comfortable and practical, while also showcasing the beauty and craftsmanship of the local culture.

Men Traditional Clothing

Traditional men's clothing in Morocco varies depending on the region and occasion, but some common Elements include the djellabas, a long loose fitting garment with full sleeves and a hood; the "Gandora" a long flowing robe-like garment with full sleeves and a hood, the burnous, a long hooded cloak made from wool or camel hair, the kaftan, a long, flowing tunic with full sleeves and a narrow collar, and the barouche, type of Slipper or sandal typically made from leather or fabric. these garments are made from locally sourced materials and may be decorated with intricate embroidery. they are typically worn with a belt or sash around the waist. Overall, traditional Moroccan men's clothing is designed to be comfortable and practical while also showcasing the local culture's beauty and craftsmanship



Figure 8.5.1: Moroccans' Traditional Clothes for Men and Women. (CC BY-SA 4.0)

Activities

Query 8.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.5.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 8.5.3

Put the name of the city in the correct column:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity

You posted on your social media about your summer trip to Morocco. Share with your followers the famous cities, capital, historical places, famous dishes, what you liked and did not like, and the weather.

This page titled 8.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

9: AT THE UNIVERSITY في الجامعة “FII ALJAMIAH”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Use the "Nisba" adjective and root
- Learn new vocabulary about school subjects and days of the week
- Talk about your school
- Learn about Sudan's culture, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

9.1: The Nisba Adjective

9.2: Vocabulary

9.3: Dialogue and Reading

9.4: Roots الجذورو, New Verbs (to read, to write)

9.5: Culture

This page titled 9: At the University في الجامعة “fii Aljamiah” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

- 1: An Overview of Arabic by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.1: The Nisba Adjective

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and use the "Nisba" adjective.

Grammar Note 9.1: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبة

- Nisba adjective: is an adjective indicating the person's place of origin or affiliation.
- It is derived from a noun that refres to a city, country, region..etc
- It ends with suffix يّ for masculine مذكّر or يّة for feminine مؤنث
- Erase الـ then add يّ for masculine مذكّر or يّة for feminine مؤنث

Examples:

French	فرنسية	فرنسيّ	France	فرنسا
Iraqi	عراقية	عراقي	Iraq	العراق
Syrian	سورية	سوري	Syria	سوريا

Query 9.1.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.1.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

		https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=g5vnuBdW3cc

		https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UmeeoIkHwcc&t=137s

This page titled 9.1: The Nisba Adjective is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

9.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and say new vocabulary about school subjects and supplies.
- List the days of the week.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 مدسة		School

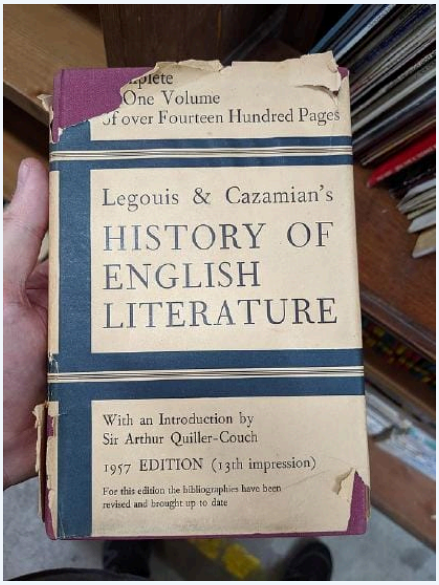
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 (University)		Univers (n)
	Arabic Literature (n)	لأدب لعربي
 English Literature; CC BY-SA 3.0		Englis Literatu (n)

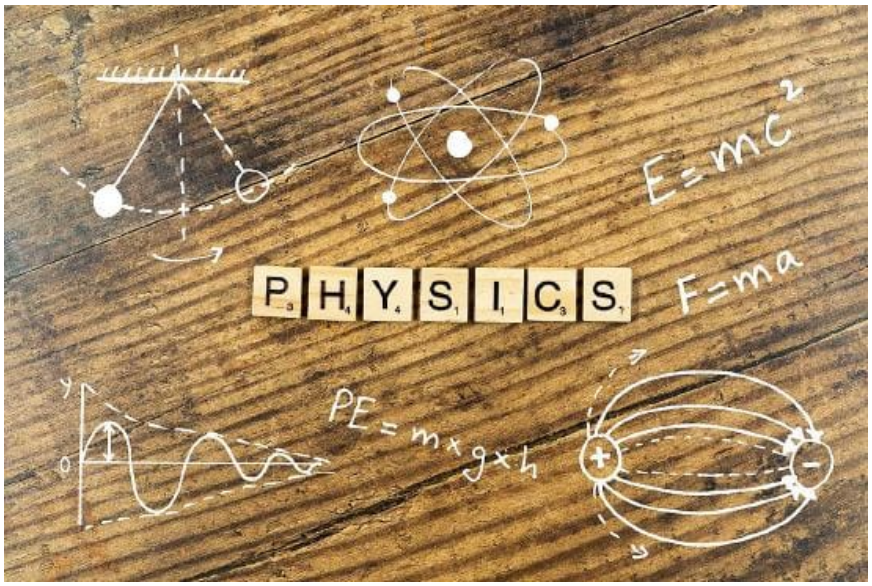
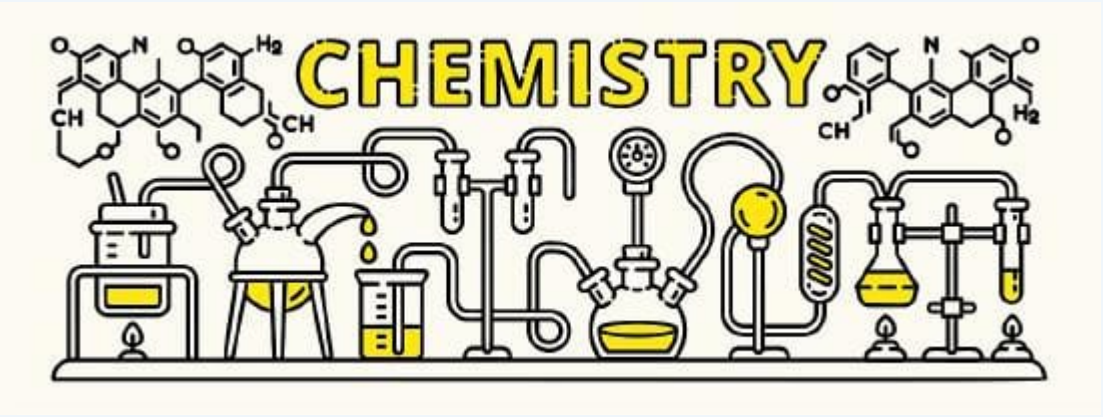
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Physics; CC BY 2.0		Physic (n)
 Chemistry; CC BY-SA 4.0		Chemis (n)

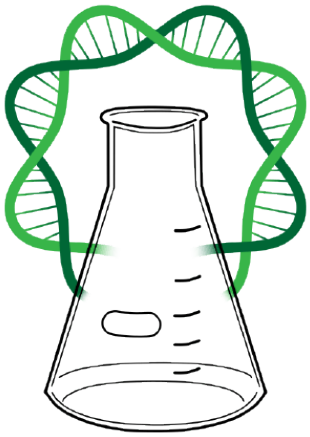
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Science; CC BY-SA 3.0		Scienc n)
 Sport; CC BY-SA 3.0		Sport (

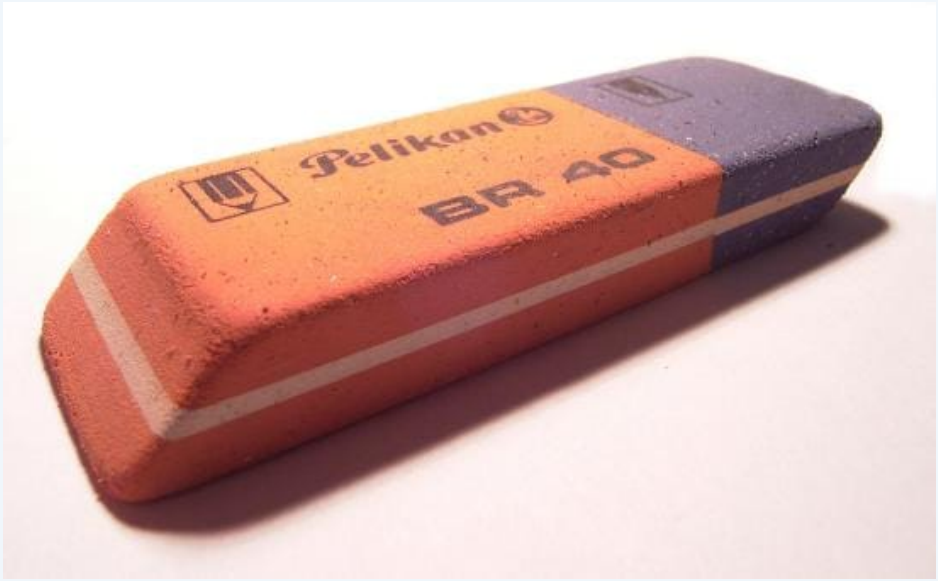
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Pen; CC BY-SA 3.0		Pencil
 Eraser; CC BY-SA 3.0		Eraser

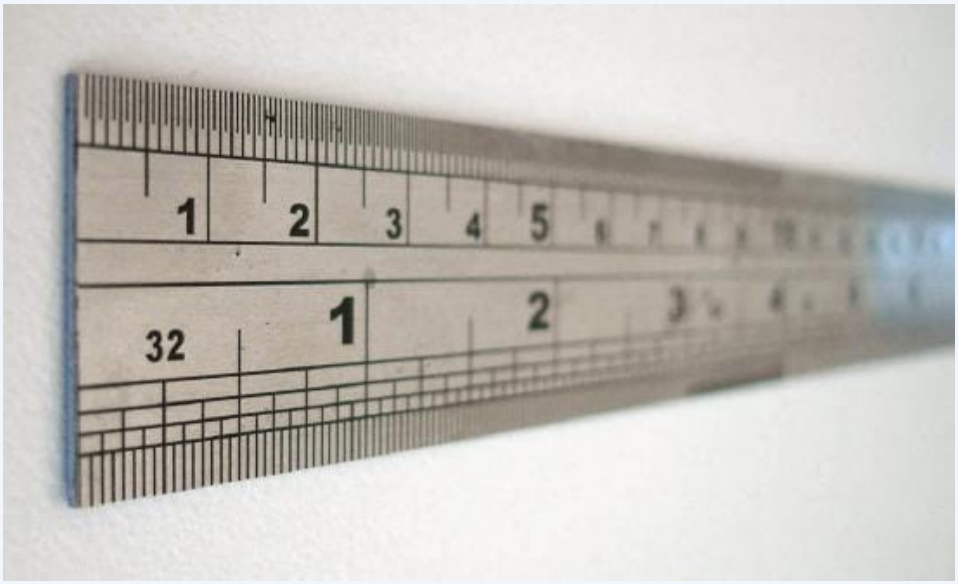
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 Computer; CC BY-SA 4.0		Compu (n)
 Ruler; CC BY-SA 4.0		Ruler (

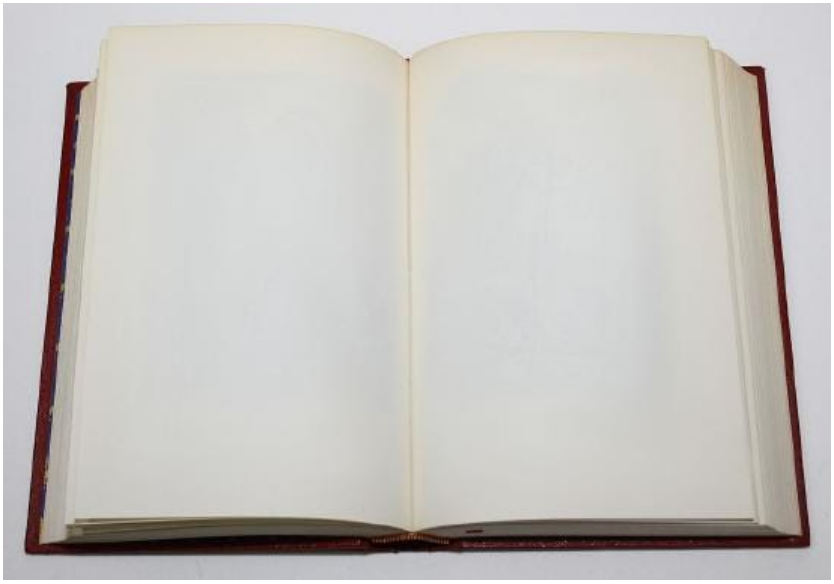
Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 (Book)		Book (
 Notebook; CC0		Notebo

Image	Pronunciation	Meani
 (source)		I study
 Classroom; CC BY 2.0		Classro (n)

Adverbs

Adverbs

Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
	After	بَعْدَ
	Before	قَـبْـلَ

Cognate

Meaning	Formal / Written
Chemistry	كيمياء
Physics	فيزياء
Aljabr	الجبر
Computer	كمبيوتر
Technology	التكنولوجيا
Electronic	الكترونية

Days of the week

Days of the week

Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
	Weekend	نهاية الأسبوع
	Saturday	السبت
	Sunday	الأحد
	Monday	الاثنين
	Tuesday	الثلاثاء
	Wednesday	الأربعاء
	Thursday	الخميس
	Friday	الجمعة
	The week	الأسبوع
	Days	أيام

Activity 1

Query 9.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

uery 9.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.2.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 9.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

9.3: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer questions about school
- Talk about your school

Dialogue # 1

Watch the dialogue between Hassan and Rana about school. Then practice the dialogue with your partner.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialog Text

English Meaning	Dialogue in Arabic
Hassan: Hello, Rana	حَسَن : السّلامُ عليكم يا رَنا
Rana: Hello, Hassan!	رَنا : وعلَيْكُم السَّلام يا حَسَن
Hassan: How are you today?	حَسَن : كيْفَ حالُكِ اليَوْم؟
Rana: I am doing well, and you?	رَنا : أنا بِخَيْر، الحَمدُ للهِ، وَأَنْتَ؟
Hassan: I am doing great, thank you. Which university do you attend?	حَسَن : أنا جَيّد، شُكْراً. أيْنَ تَدْرُسين؟
Rana: I am a student at the University of Baghdad. What about you?	رَنا : أَدرُسُ في جامِعَةِ بَغْداد، وأَنْتَ؟
Hassan: I am a student at the University of California – Los Angeles.	حَسَن : أَدْرُسُ في جامِعَةِ وِلايَةِ كاليفورنيا لوس أنْجلوس
Rana: What are you studying, Hassan?	رَنا : ماذا تَدْرُسُ يا حَسن؟
Hassan: I am studying chemistry. What about you, Rana?	حَسَن : أَدْرُسُ الكيمياء، وَماذا تَدْرُسين يا رَنا؟
Rana: I am studying computer science.	رَنا : أَدْرُسُ علومَ الكُمبيوتر
Hassan: Where do you live?	حَسَن : أَيْنَ تَسكنين؟
Rana: I live with my sister and brother in a small house on Nile Street.	رَنا : أَسكُنُ في بيْتٍ صغيرٍ مع أُختي وَأَخي في شارع النِّيل

English Meaning	Dialogue in Arabic
Hassan: I live with my friends - Ahmad, Tom, and Jack - in a small apartment.	حَسَن : أَنا أَسْكُنُ معَ صَديقي أَحْمَد وَتوم وجاك في شقة صغيرة
Rana: Are you employed?	رَنا : هل تَعمَل؟
Hassan: I am unemployed and am a full-time student. What about you?	حَسَن : لا أعْمَلُ، أنا طالِب، وأنْتِ؟
Rana: I work at a sweets bakery.	رَنا : أنا أعملُ في دُكان حَلوى
Hassan: How nice! We will start eating sweets from your bakery then!	حَسَن : يا سلام، نأْكُل حلوى من عِندِ رَنا
Rana: Yalla, and drink tea as well!	رَنا : يلا، وَنَشْرَبُ شاي
Hassan: Thank you, Rana.	حَسَن : شكراً يا رَنا
Rana: You are welcome.	رَنا : عَفواً

Query 9.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.3.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading #1:

Read the text of Dr. Zaid Ahmad introducing himself to his students in the first Arabic class meeting.

English	Arabic
Hello! Welcome to your Arabic language class. My name is Doctor Zaid Ahmad and I have received my doctorate degree in the Arabic language. I study at the University of California – San Bernadino. I am originally from Najaf, Iraq and am also bilingual; I speak both Arabic and English. My office is in the College of Humanities and Liberal Arts, directly before the College of Sciences. I am married with children: one son and one daughter. My wife is also Iraqi - from the city of Baghdad - and is a professor of chemistry. My son, Rasool, is a student at the University of California – San Francisco, and he is studying English literature. My daughter, Ayat, is a student at the University of California – Fullerton, and she is studying computer science. We live in the city of Pomona.	السلام عليكم . أَهلاً وَسهلاً بكم في صفِ اللغة العربية. اسمي الدكتور زَيد أَحمد . أَنا دكتور لغة عربية وَ أُدَرِّسُ في جامعةِ كاليفورنيا سان برناندينو. أنا مِنَ العراق مِن مَدينةِ النجف، وَأَسكُنُ في مدينَةِ سان برناندينو في ولاية كاليفورنيا.وَأنا أتكلم اللغة العربية واللغة الإنجليزية. مَكتَبي في كليةِ الأداب قبل كلية العلوم. أنا مُتَزوج وَ عِندي وَلد وَ بنت. زَوجتي عِراقية مِن مَدينة بَغداد وَهي أُستاذة كيمياء. وابني رسول طالب في جامعةِ كاليفورنيا سان برناردينو وَ هُو يدرسُ الأدب الأنجليزي .وابنتي آيات طالبة في جامعةِ كاليفورنيا فولرتن وَ هي تَدرسُ علم الحاسوب. وَنحن نَسكنُ في مدينةِ بَمونا في ولاية كاليفورنيا

Query 9.3.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.3.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 9.3.7

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading # 2:

Read Dania's presentation about her family in Arabic language class. Then practice it with your partner.

English	Arabic
Hello and welcome! My name is Dania Salem, and I am from Lebanon. I live with my family in the city of Dearborn, Michigan. I am a sophomore student at Michigan State University and am studying Physics. My home is located near the University. I study the Arabic language three days out of the week: Monday, Wednesday, and Friday. I am also trilingual: I know Arabic, English, and Spanish. I enjoy playing sports on the weekend.	مرحباً بِكم أَنا دانية سالم.أَنا مِن لُبنان.وَأَسكنُ في بيت مَع عائِلَتي فِي مَدينةِ ديربون في وِلايةِ ميشيغن.وَأَنا طالبةٌ في جامعةِ وِلايةِ مشيغان كُلية الفيزياء.الجامعةُ قريبةٌ من بيتي.وَأَنا في السنةِ الثانيةِ في الجامعة.وأَدرسُ اللغة العربية ثلاثة أيام في الأسبوع : يومُ الأثنين وَيومُ الأربعاء وَيومُ الجمعة. وِ أَعرفُ ثلاث لغات هي اللغةُ العربية وَالإنجليزيةُ وَالأسبانيةُ. وَأَلعبُ الرياضة في عطلةِ نهاية الأسبوع

Interactive Content

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity

Pretend you moved to a different state to pursue your education. And it's your first day at the university. Call your friend on face time and give him/her a tour around the university. Say the name of the university, show your classes and list what classes you are taking, and describe the weather in the city.

This page titled 9.3: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

9.4: Roots الجذورو, New Verbs (to read, to write)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- use the roots
- derive the root words from given words

Grammar Note : Roots الجذور

Arabic words are derived from a simple root words "root" جذر set of sequence of consonants letters that contain the base meaning of the word.

The root is the three important letters in the word.

The Arabic dictionaries are organized according to the roots. For example to find out the meaning of Arabic word in the dictionary, you have to find the root of that word.

Every Arabic noun and verb has a root.

For example: form the three letter root ك-ت-ب all of these words are derived, and many more as well.

Watch the following video about the Arabic Roots

Query 9.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 9.4: Roots الجذورو, New Verbs (to read, to write) is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

9.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- learn about geographical location and flag of Sudan, and the famous cities in the country

- learn about the authentic food, traditional clothing, and famous artifact in Sudan

Facts to know about Sudan:

- Official Name: **Republic of the Sudan** - جمهورية السودان
- Capital: Khartoum
- Population: 47,958,856[(2022 estimate)
- Currency: *The Sudanese* pound - الجنيه السوداني
- Continent: Africa - أفريقيا
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة- allughat alearabiat alfushaa alhaditha



Figure 9.5.1: Sudan. CC BY-SA 3.0

9.1 Geographical Location and Flag:

This table shows Sudan capital and national fLag

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The Name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	Flag

Sudan	السُّودان	Khartoum	الخرطوم	 Flag of Sudan

9.2 Famous Artifacts in Sudan:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

9.3 Famous Cities in Sudan:

Read about some of the famous cities in Sudan.

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	About the City	Image
Khartoum	الخرطوم	Khartoum	- The capital of Sudan. -“Khartoum” means elephant’s trunk. - Is the second largest city in the country.	

Omdurman	أم درمان	Omdurman	- The largest city in Sudan. - The city is also well known for its abundance outdoor multicultural souqs (markets).	
Nayala	نايالا	Nayala	- Is the capital of southern Darfur in the south-west of Sudan. - It is a major trading post for Gum Arabic.	

Query 9.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

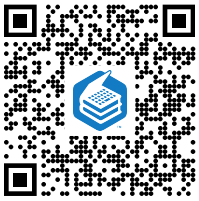
View this Interactive Content online



Query 9.5.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online



9.4 Traditional Foods

Watch the following videos and learn about the Sudanes traditional foods:

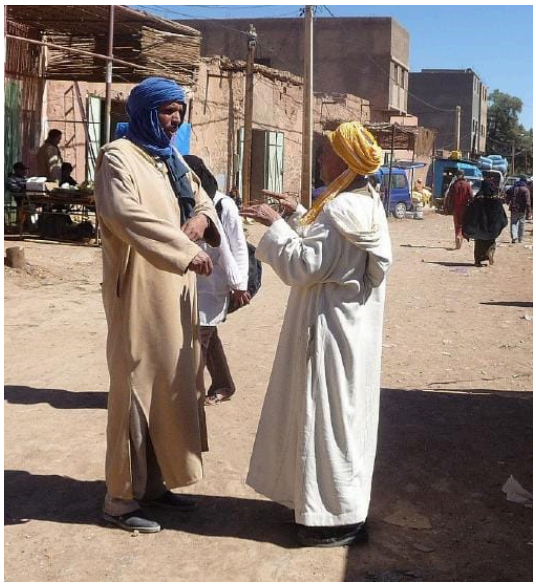
Food in English	Video
فلافل سودانية Sudanese Falafel	**YouTube Video** *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online



العصيدة السودانية بلملاح Sudanese Asida with Moulah	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

9.5 Traditional Clothing:

		 Traditional Woman Clothing; CC BY 2.0



Traditional Men Clothing; CC BY 2.0

Presentational Activity

You posted on your social media about your summer trip to Sudan. Share with your followers the famous cities, capital, historical places, famous dishes, what you liked and did not like, and the weather.

This page titled 9.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

10: THE PROFESSION العمل “AL-AMEL”

Chapter Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Create a basic conversation related to work and profession.
- Introduce yourself and others and provide basic personal information.
- Learn about the Singular and Plural rules of Arabic.
- Learn about Tunisia and Algeria, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

10.1: Duals in Arabic

10.2: Vocabulary

10.3: Dialouge and Reading

10.4: Plurals In Arabic

10.5: Culture

This page titled 10: The profession العمل “Al-amel” is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

10.1: Duals in Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the Dual nouns and adjectives using suffixes.
- Use Duals depending on different grammatical cases.

10.1.1. Arabic Nouns and Adjectives

When it comes to **nouns** and **adjectives**, Arabic has three forms: the **Singular**, the **Dual**, and the **Plural**. The **Singular** is used to refer to just one person or thing. The **Dual** is used to refer to two people or things. The **Plural** is used to refer to three or more people or things. The Dual and the Plural end in certain letters that denote the number of people or objects (suffixes). This section introduces **The Dual** with its suffixes and uses.

10.1.1.1. The Dual

The Dual (المثنّى) is formed by adding either the letters ان- or ين- to the end of the word in masculine nouns/adjectives depending on the grammatical case of the word. If the word ends in a round Taa' (ة), as is the case in feminine nouns/adjectives, the ة is changed to ت and then ان- or ين- are added depending on the grammatical case of the word. The details of how and when to use these suffixes are explained in the table below.

This table illustrates how to use the different suffixes of Dual Nouns/Adjectives:

The Dual Letters in Arabic	Pronunciation	When to Use	Example	Recording
-ان	'aan	Used in nominative-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (usually masculine nouns/adjectives)	مهندسٌ ← مهندسَ**ان** المهندسُ ← المهندسَ**ان**	
-ين	'een	Used in accusative and genitive-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (usually masculine nouns/adjectives)	مهندساً ← مهندسَ**ين** المهندسَ ← المهندسَ**ين** مهندسٍ ← مهندسَ**ين** المهندسِ ← المهندسَ**ين**	
-تان	taan	Used in nominative-case nouns/adjectives that end in ة (usually masculine nouns/adjectives)	مترجمةٌ ← مترجمتَ**ان** المترجمةُ ← المترجمتَ**ان**	

-تين	tayn	Used in accusative and genitive-case nouns/adjectives that end in ة (usually feminine nouns/adjectives)	مترجمةً ← المترجمتَ**ين** المترجمةَ ← المترجمتَ**ين** مترجمةٍ ← المترجمتَ**ين** المترجمةِ ← المترجمتَ**ين**	

The video below presents the Dual and how it is used in different grammatical cases:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

10.1.2. Activities

Query 10.1.2.1

Drag the suffixes and put them in their correct places:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Type in Arabic using this link (http://www.arabic-keyboard.org/) to do the exercises below:

Query 10.1.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.1.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.1.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.1.2.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 10.1: Duals in Arabic is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

10.2: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary about professions and jobs.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).
- Learn the verb (to work)

Vocabulary

This table provides vocabulary related to work:

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Work/Job	Work/Job	عَمَلْ	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 **Profession/Career**	Profession/ Career	مِهنة	
 **Employee**	Employee	(m.) مُوظّف (f.) مُوظّفة	

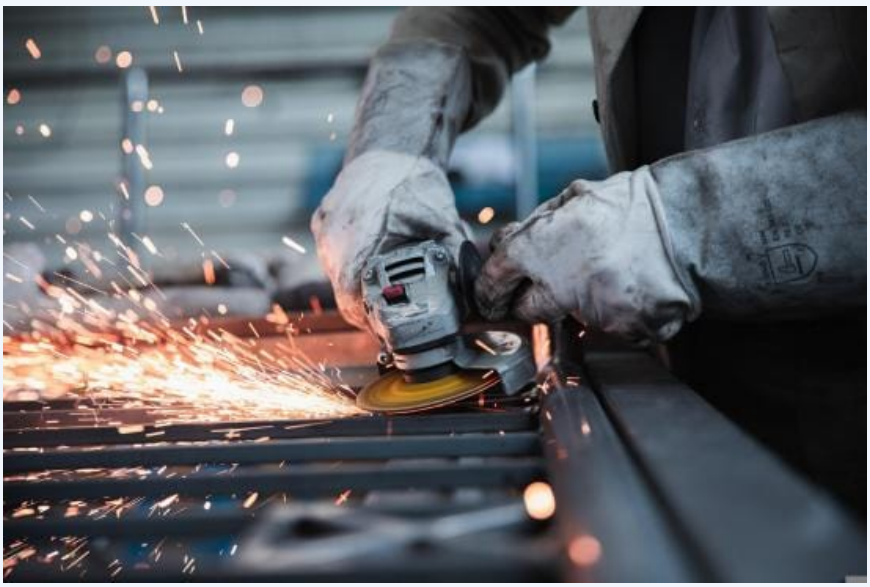
Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Worker/Laborer	Worker/ Laborer	(m.) عامِل (f.) عامِلة	
 Engineering	Engineering	هَندَسة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Engineer	Engineer	(m.) مُهندس (f.) مُهندسة	
 Law	Law	مُحاماة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Lawyer	Lawyer	(m.) مُحامي (f.) مُحامية	
 Judge	Judge	(m./f.) قاضي	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Police	Police	شُرطة	
 Police Officer	Police Officer	(m.) شُرطي (f.) شُرطيّة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Journalism	Journalism	صحافة	
 Journalist	Journalist	(m.) صحفي (f.) صحفيّة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Aviation	Aviation	طيران	
 Pilot	Pilot	(m./f.) طيّار	

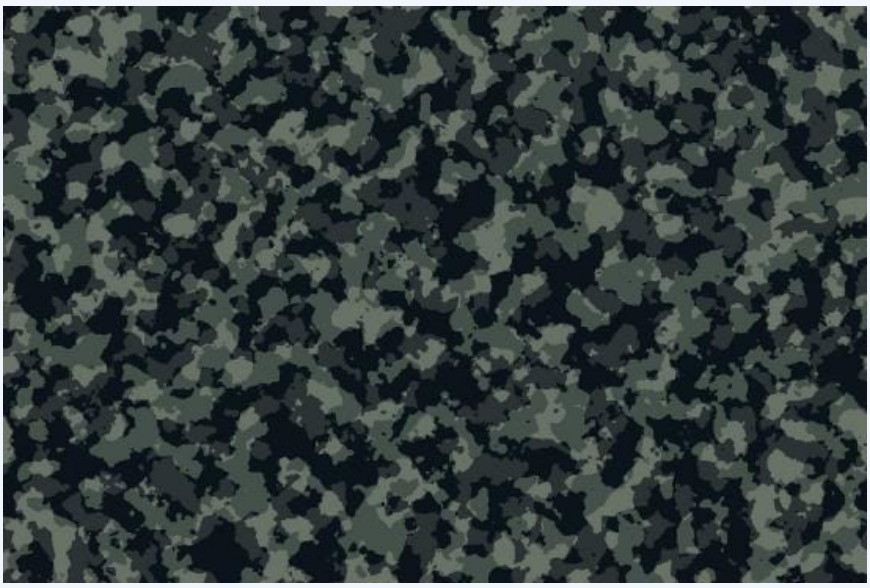
Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Military	Military	جيش	
 Soldier	Soldier	(m./f.) عَسكري	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Military Officer	Military Officer	(m./f.) ضابط	
 Programming	Programming	بَرمجة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Programmer	Programmer	(m.) مُبرمج (f.) مُبرمجة	
 Translation	Translation	تَرجمة	

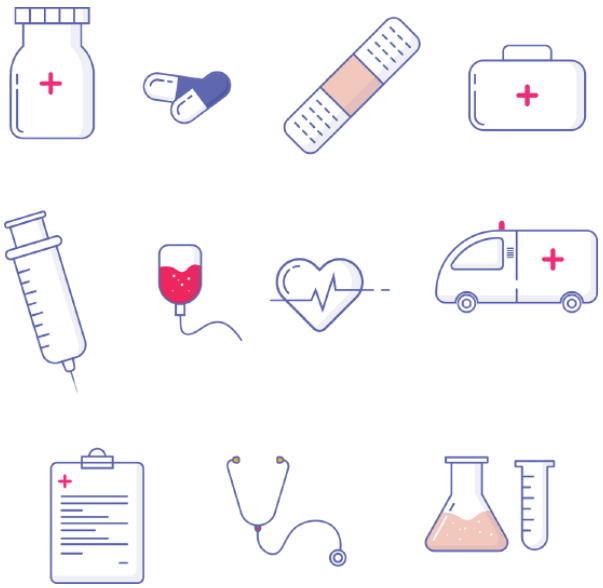
Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Translator	Translator	(m.) مُترجم (f.) مُترجمة	
 Medicine	Medicine	طِبْ	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Doctor	Doctor	(m.) طَبيب (f.) طَبيبة	
 Nurse	Nurse	(m.) مُمرّض (f.) مُمرّضة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Player	Player	(m.) لاعِب (f.) لاعِبة	
 Court/Field	Court/Field	مَلعَبْ	

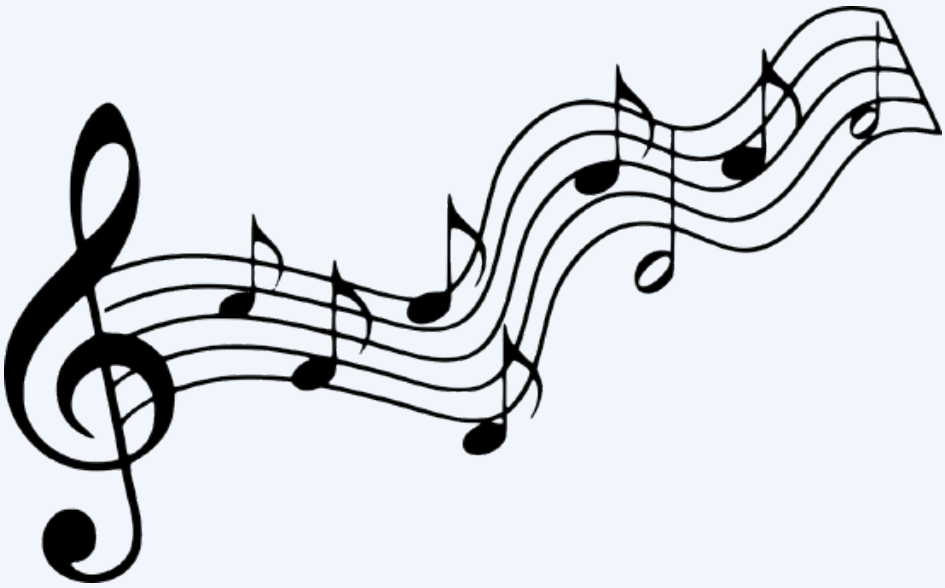
Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Music Playing	Music Playing	عَزْفْ	
 Musician	Musician	(m.) عازِف (f.) عازِفة	

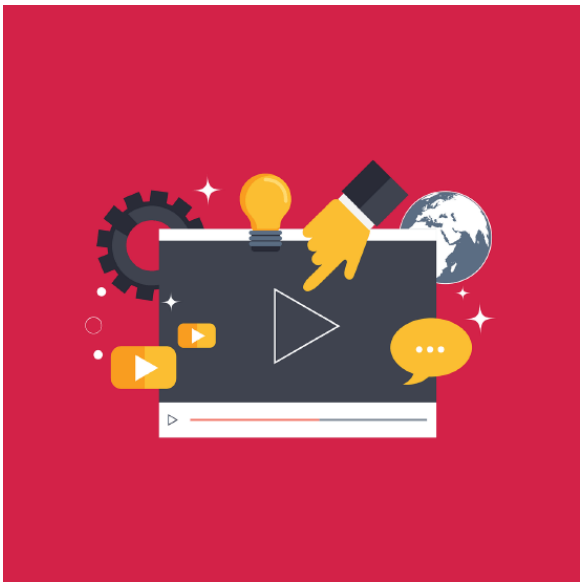
Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Driving	Driving	قيادة	
 Driver	Driver	(m.) سائِق (f.) سائِقة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Company	Company	شَرِكة	
 Teaching	Teaching	تَدريس	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronu
 Teacher	Teacher	(m.) أُستاذ (f.) أُستاذَة	

Cognate

Some examples of cognate words are **Coffee**, **Cotton**, **Gazelle**, **Alcohol**, **Henna**, and **Jasmine**.

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image
Blogger	بلوغر (m./f.)	 Blogger
YouTuber	يوتيوبر (m./f.)	 YouTuber

Coffee	Qahwa/قهوة	 Coffee
Cotton	Qutn/قطن	 Cotton

Gazelle	Ghazaal/غزال	 **Gazelle**
Alcohol	Alkuhoul/الكحول	 **Alcohol**

Jasmine	Yasameen/یاسمین	 Jasmine

Activities

Query 10.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.2.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.2.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.2.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.2.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.2.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

New Present Tense Verb (to work)

You will learn a new verb (to work = عمل) in the table below.

To Work عمِلَ

Example	Meaning	Audio	Arabic Meaning
أنا أعْمَلُ في شركَة كبيرَة	I work		أَعْمَلُ
نحنُ نَعْمَلُ في مكتبِ مُحاماةٍ	We work		نَعْمَلُ
هل تعْمَلُ طيّاراً في شركة أمريكان للطيران، يا رامي؟	You work (Masculine/ Singular)		تَعْمَلُ
هل تعملين مُبَرمِجَةً في شركةِ آبل، يا رَانيا؟	You work (Feminine/ Singular)		تَعْمَلين
هل تعْمَلون في شركة غوغل، يا شباب؟	You work (all)		تَعْمَلُون
أخي أحمَد يعملُ مهندساً في السعوديّة	He works		يَعْمَلُ
أختي تعمَلُ شُرطيَّةً في مدينةِ نيويورك	She works		تَعْمَلُ
هم يعملون في الصَّحافةِ الالكترونية	They (all) work		يَعْمَلُون

Activities

Query 10.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.2.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 10.2: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

- 2: Vocabulary by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.3: Dialouge and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be introduced to sample conversations in which you:

- Introduce yourself and be introduced to others.
- Talk about your profession and learn about others' professions.

Dialouge 1

Watch the video: Mona and Salem met at the entrance of the university, and they started this conversation.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

الحوار الأول: منى وسالم

English	الحوار بالعربي
Hello	مُنى: مرحباً
Hello	سالِم: أهلاً وسهلاً
How's everything?	مُنى: ما الأخبار؟
All right	سالِم: جيّدة
What do you do?	مُنى: ماذا تعمل؟
I work at Amazon. What do you do?	سالِم: أعمل في شركة أمازون، وأنتِ ماذا تعملين؟
I am an Uber driver	مُنى: أعمل سائقة أوبر
Great	سالِم: رائع
Thanks, that's nice of you	مُنى: شكراً، هذا من لطفك
You're welcome	سالِم: عفواً

Query 10.3.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Dialog 2

Watch the video: the dialogue between Jad, Salma, and Julian

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Dialog 2:

English	الحوار بالعربي
Jad: Good evening, Salma	جاد: مساء الخير يا سلمى
Salma: Good evening, Jad. How are you?	سلمى: مساء النور يا جاد، كيف حالكَ؟
Jad: Fine, and you?	جاد: بخير، وأنتِ؟
Salma: Good. Is this your friend?	سلمى: بخير. هَل هذا صديقكَ؟
Jad: Yes, his name's Julian. Julian, this is my friend, Salma.	جاد: نعم، اسمه جوليان. جوليان، هذه صديقتي سلمى
Salma: Hello, Julian!	سلمى: مرحباً جوليان
Julian: Hello, Salma!	جوليان: مرحباً سلمى
Salma: How are you?	سلمى: كيف حالكَ؟
Julian: Good, thank God. How are you?	جوليان: بخير، الحمد لله. وأنتِ كيف حالكِ؟
Salma: Fine, thanks. What do you do, Julian?	سلمى: بخير، شكراً. ماذا تعمل يا جوليان؟

English	الحوار بالعربي
Julian: I am a professor at UCLA.	جوليان: أنا أستاذ في جامعة كاليفورنيا لوس آنجلوس
Salma: Really? My sister is a professor there, too.	سلمى: حقاً؟ أختي أستاذةٌ هناك أيضاً
Julian: And you, what do you do, Salma?	جوليان: وأنتِ ماذا تعملين يا سلمى؟
Salma: I am a journalist for Al Balad newspaper	سلمى: أنا صحفيّة في صحيفة البلد
Julian: This is great. Do you [two] want to go to a cafe to chat more?	جوليان: هذا رائع. هل تريدان الذهاب إلى مقهى لنتحدث أكثر؟
Jad: Of course	جاد: بالتأكيد
Salma: With pleasure!	سلمى: بكلّ سرور
Julian: Okay, let's go!	جوليان: حسناً، لنذهب

Aractivities

Query 10.3.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.3.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.3.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading 1

Listen and read the text about Professor Rami and his family. Then, practice reading the text and answer the questions.

الأستاذ رامي

English	Arabic
Rami has a small family. Rami is married and has a son and two daughters. Rami is a professor of Arabic language at the University of Damascus, and works as a translator for a large company. Rami's wife works as an employee at a trvel agent office in Damascus. Rami's son is a student at the University of Aleppo and is studying medicine. He does not work. Rami's eldest daughter is a university student studying law. She works for two days in a large law firm in Damascus. His young daughter is a student at the University of Beirut, studying electronic engineering. She doesn't work, she doesn't have time. Professor Rami goes to work at the university on Sundays, Tuesdays, and Thursdays. He works at the translation company on Mondays and Wednesdays. Rami loves translation very much. Rami doesn't work on Friday. He goes with his family to his father and mother's house on Friday. On Saturdays, Professor Rami watches American films and does not work	عند رامي أسرَةٌ صغيرَةٌ. رامي مُتَزَوْجٌ وعندهُ إبْن وَبِنْتان. رامي أستاذُ لغةٍ عربيةٍ في جامِعَةِ دِمشق، ويعمل مُترجِماً في شَرِكة كبيرَة. زوجةُ رامي تَعْمَلُ مُوَظَفةً في مكتبِ الطَّيران في مدينةِ دمشق. ابنُ رامي طالِبٌ في جامعةِ حَلب وَهو يدرسُ الطّب. هُوَ لا يعملُ. ابْنَةُ رامي الكَبيرَة طالِبة في الجامِعة وهي تدرُسُ المُحاماة. وهي تعملُ يومين في مَكتب محاماة كبير في مدينةِ دمشق. ابنتُهُ الصغيرَة طالِبة في جامِعةِ بَيْروت، وهي تدرسُ الهَندسة الالكترونية. هي لا تعملُ، ليسَ عِندَها وقت الأُستاذ رامي يذهبُ إلى العملِ في الجامِعة أيّام الأحد والثلاثاء والخَميس. ويعْملُ في شركَةِ التّرجمة أيام الإثنين والأرْبعاء. يُحبُّ رامي التَّرجمة كثيراً. رامي لا يعمل يوم الجمعة. يذهب مع أسرَتِهِ إلى بيتِ أبيه وأُمِّه في يومِ الجُمعة. في يومِ السّبتِ، يُشاهِدُ الأستاذ رامي الأفلام الأمريكية ولا يعملُ

Activities

Query 10.3.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.3.6

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Reading 2

Listen and read the text about Dr. Rima and her family. Then, practice reading the text and answer the questions.

الدكتورة ريما

English	Arabic
This is Rima. Rima works at a hospital. She is a doctor. Rima loves her job. Also, Rima's husband is a doctor. Rima goes to the hospital by Uber every day.	هذهِ ريما. تعمل ريما في المشفى. هي طبيبةٌ. ريما تحبُّ عمَلها. زوجُ ريما طبيبٌ أيْضاً. تذهب ريما إلى المشفى بسيارةِ أوبر كلَّ يوم.

This page titled 10.3: Dialouge and Reading is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

10.4: Plurals In Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn how to form Plural nouns and adjectives using suffixes.
- Learn how to use Plurals depending on different grammatical cases.

10.4.1. The Plural

The Plural (الجمع) has two types in Arabic: Regular (Sound) Plural (جمع سالم) and Irregular (Broken) Plural (جمع تكسير). Regular Plural is itself divided into two types: Sound Masculine Plural (جمع مذكّر سالم) and Sound Feminine Plural (جمع مؤنّث سالم).

Sound Masculine Plural is formed by adding ون-/ين- to the end of the word in masculine nouns/adjectives depending on the grammatical case of the word.

Sound Feminine Plural is formed by adding ات- to the end of the word in feminine nouns/adjectives.

Broken Plural does not follow rules, but is formed by breaking the word and adding certain letters to it to make it plural.

This table illustrates how to use the different suffixes of Plural Nouns/Adjectives:

Type of Plural	The Plural Letters in Arabic	Pronunciation	When to Use	Example	Recording
Sound Masculine Plural	ون-	'oon	Used in nominative-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (masculine nouns/adjectives)	مبرمجٌ ← مبرمج**ون** المبرمجُ ← المبرمج**ون**	
Sound Masculine Plural	ين-	'een	Used in accusative and genitive-case nouns/ adjectives that don't end in ة (masculine nouns/ adjectives)	مبرمجاً ← مبرمج**ين** المبرمجَ ← المبرمج**ين** مبرمجٍ ← مبرمج**ين** المبرمجِ ← المبرمج**ين**	
Sound Feminine Plural	ات-	aat	Used in all-case nouns/adjectives that end in ة (feminine nouns/adjectives)	عازفةٌ/عازفةً/ عازفةٍ ← عازف**ات** العازفةُ/العازفةَ/ العازفةِ ← العازف**ات**	

Broken Plural	Various letters	No specific pronunciation	No specific rule	أستاذ/أستاذة ← أساتذة عمل ← أعمال قاضي ← قضاة جيش ← جيوش ضابط ← ضبّاط طبيب/طبيبة ← أطبّاء ملعب ← ملاعب	

The video below presents the types of Plural and how they are formed:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

10.4.3. Activities

Query 10.4.1

Drag the suffixes and put them in their correct places:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.4.2

Drag the suffixes and put them in their correct places:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Type in Arabic using this link (http://www.arabic-keyboard.org/) to do the exercise below:

Query 10.4.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.4.4

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.4.1

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Dual and Plural Separate Subject Personal Pronouns

Previously in **Chapter 2: Section 2.4: Grammar**, you were introduced to the following **Separate Subject Personal Pronouns**:

هُم - هي - هو - نحنُ - أنتُم - أنتَ - أنتِ - أنا. In addition, in this chapter, you will be introduced to four more **Separate Subject Personal Pronouns**: هُما - أنتُما indicating dual personal pronouns, and هُنَّ - أنتُنَّ indicating feminine plural personal pronouns.

This table demonstrates the four Separate Subject Personal Pronouns:

Pronoun in Arabic	Pronoun in English	Number of People and Gender	Pronunciation
أنتُما	You both (two)	2nd person dual (masculine/feminine)	
أنتُنَّ	You all (f.)	2nd person plural (only feminine)	
هُما	They both (two)	3rd person dual (masculine/feminine)	
هُنَّ	They all (f.)	3rd person plural (only feminine)	

Query 10.4.3.4

Match the sounds with the correct separate subject personal pronouns:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.4.3.5

Drag the Separate Subject Personal Pronouns and put them in their correct places:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled 10.4: Plurals In Arabic is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

10.5: Culture

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about the Arab countries Tunisia and Algeria, their famous cities, their most famous historical places, their traditional food, and clothes.

10.5.1. Tunisia and Algeria

Tunisia and Algeria are part of the Maghreb region of the Middle East. The Maghreb countries are Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libya, and Mauritania.

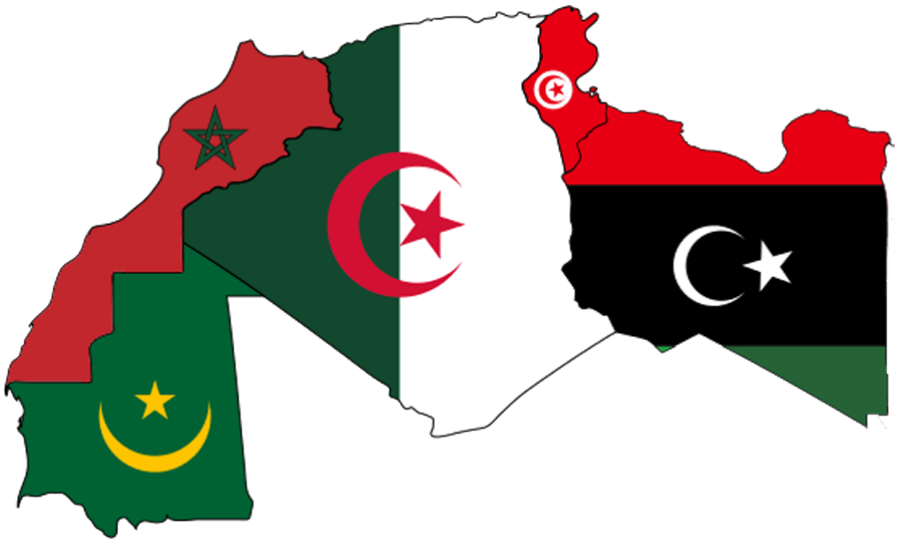
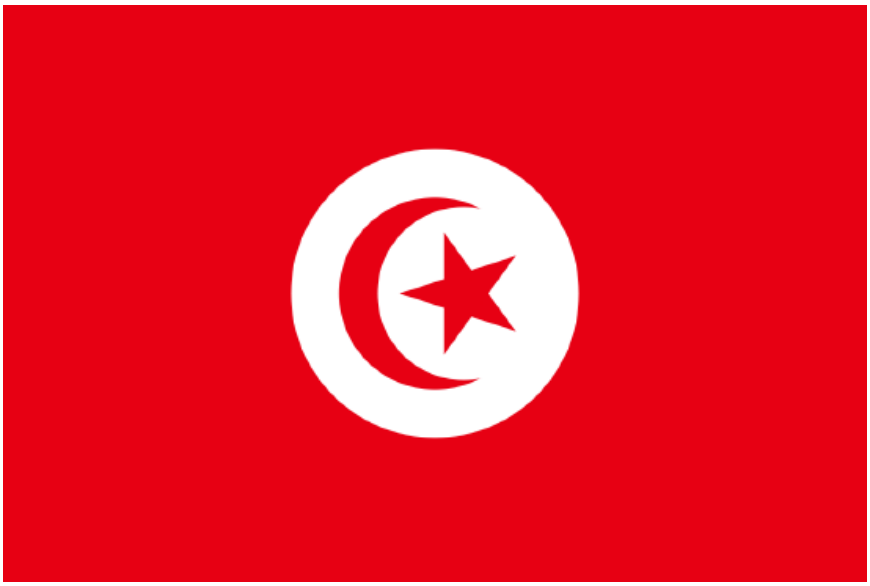


Figure 10.5.1: This figure illustrates the countries of the Maghreb Union. CC BY-SA 4.0

10.5.2. Tunisia and Algeria

This table will introduce you to Tunisia and Algeria with their capital cities:

The Country Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The Name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	Flag
Tunisia	تونس Touness	Tunis	تونس Touness	 Tunisia
Algeria	الجزائر Al-Jaza'er	Algiers	الجزائر Al-Jaza'er	 Algeria

10.5.3. Countries and Famous Cities

10.5.3.1. Tunisia

Tunisia is an Arab country located in north Africa. It borders the Mediterranean Sea to the north, north-east, and east, Algeria to the west and south-west, and Libya to the south-east.

Population: 11.82 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Tunis.

Currency: Tunisian Dinar (TND).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure 10.5.2: This figure presents the cities of Tunisia by OCHA; CC BY 3.0

This table shows the major cities in Tunisia:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Tunis	تونس	Touness	 **Tunis**; CC0
Kairouan	القيروان	Al-Qayrawan	 **Kairouan**; CC BY-SA 4.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Sfax	صفاقس	Safakess	 **Sfax**; CC BY-SA 3.0
Sousse	سوسة	Soussah	 **Sousse**; CC BY-SA 4.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Gabès	قابس	Qaabess	 **Gabès;** Pixabay License
Ariana	أريانة	Arianah	 **Ariana;** CC BY-SA 3.0

10.5.3.2. Algeria

Algeria is an Arab country located in north Africa. It borders the Mediterranean Sea to the north, Morocco to the west and north-west, Mauritania to the west, Mali to the south-west, Niger to the south-east, Libya to the east, and Tunisia to the north-east.

Population: 43.85 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Algiers.

Currency: Algerian Dinar (DZD).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



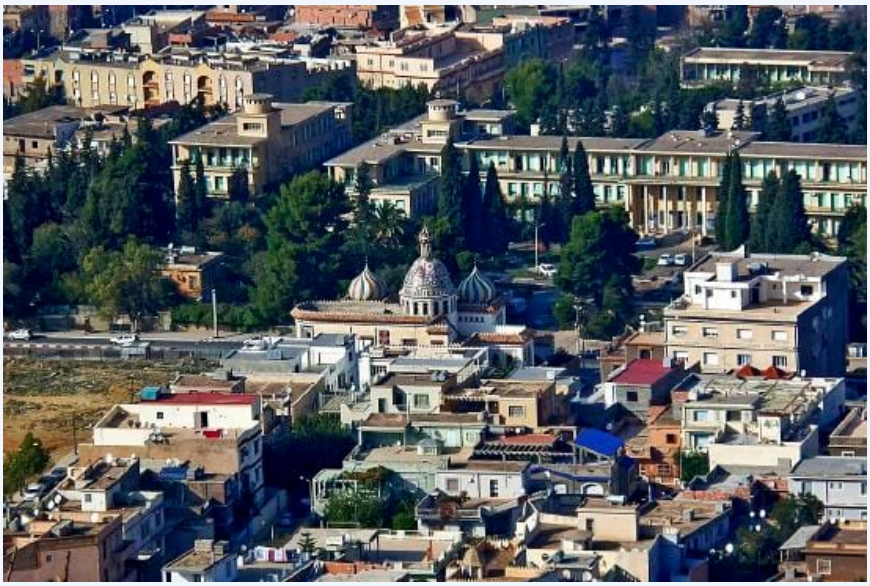
Figure 10.5.3: This figure presents the cities of Algeria by OCHA; CC BY 3.0

This table shows the major cities in Algeria:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Algiers	الجزائر	Al-Jaza'er	 **Algiers;** CC BY 2.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Oran	وهران	Wahraan	 **Oran;** CC BY-SA 4.0
Constantine	قسنطينة	Qsantinah	 **Constantine;** CC BY 2.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Batna	باتنة	Batnah	 **Batna**; CC BY-SA 3.0
Annaba	عنّابة	Annabah	 **Annaba**; CC BY-SA 2.0

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Tlemcen	تلمسان	Tlemssen	 **Tlemcen**; CC BY 3.0

10.5.4. Famous Historical Places

10.5.4.1. Tunisia

The video below presents a tour around Tunisia:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Carthage - Tunis

Carthage (Qertaaj - قرطاج) was the capital city of the Carthagian civilization north-east of Tunisia. It was one of the most important trading hubs of the Ancient Mediterranean. Carthage was founded in the 9th century BC on the Gulf of Tunis. Its remains now lie on the outskirts of Tunis, Tunisia.



Figure 10.5.4: Carthage. CC BY-SA 4.0

El Jem Amphitheater - El Jem

El Jem Amphitheater (Masrah El-Jem - مسرح الجم) is located in the north-eastern part of Tunisia in the city of El Jem. It was built in 238 AD by the Roman Empire and was one of their biggest amphitheaters. It is an exceptionally welll-preserved amphitheater.



Figure 10.5.5: El Jem Amphitheater. CC BY-SA 3.0

Bulla Regia - Jendouba

Bulla Regia (Bularigia - بولاريجيا) is an ancient town which was Berber, Punic, and Roman. It is located in the north-west of Tunisia near Jendouba. It emerged around the 5th century BC under Carthage. It is one of the most prominent historical sites in Tunisia.



Figure 10.5.6: Bulla Regia. CC BY-SA 4.0

10.5.4.2. Algeria

The video below presents a tour around Algeria:

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Notre Dame of Africa - Algiers

Notre Dame of Africa (Al-Saiyda Al-Ifriqiya - السيّدة الإفريقيّة) is located on the north side of Algiers, Algeria. It was inaugurated in 1872 and employed a Neo-Byzantine style.

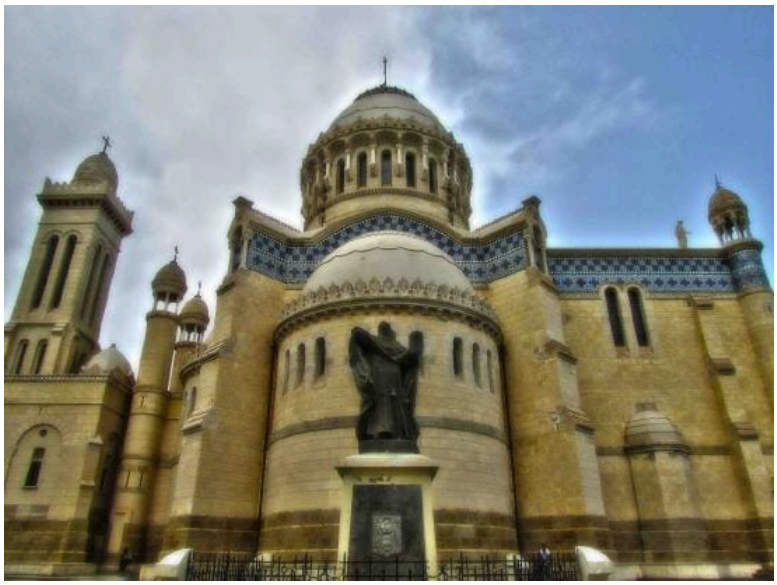


Figure 10.5.7: Notre Dame of Africa. CC BY-SA 3.0

Royal Mausoleum of Mauretania - Tipaza Province

The Royal Mausoleum of Mauretania (Al-Dhareeh Al-Malaki Al- Moritani - الضريح الملكي الموريتاني) is a funerary monument located on the road between Churchell and Algiers in Tipaza Province, Algeria. It is the tomb where the Numidian Berber King Juba II and the Queen Cleopatra Selene II, sovereigns of Numidia and Mauretania Caesariensis, were allegedly buried. The Mausoleum was founded in 3 BC.



Figure 10.5.8: Royal Mausoleum of Mauretania. CC BY-SA 3.0

Fort Santa Cruz - Oran

Fort Santa Cruz (Qal'et Santa Krooz - قلعة سانتا كروز) is one of three forts in Oran. It was built between 1577 and 1604 by the Spaniards on the Pic d'Aidour above Gulf of Oran in the Mediterranean Sea, at an elevation of above 400 metres.



Figure 10.5.9: Fort Santa Cruz. CC BY-SA 4.0

10.5.5. Traditional Food and Clothes

10.5.5.1. Traditional Food

The Maghreb countries have very delicious foods, some of which are found in common between them. While some remain the same from one Maghreb country to another, other vary in ingrediants and names.

This table presents the most famous traditional dishes in Tunisia and Algeria:

Region	Video
Traditional food in Tunisia	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Traditional food in Algeria	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

This table presents how to make some of the most famous traditional food in Tunisia and Algeria:

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Shakshuka	شكشوكة	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Shakshuka

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Couscous	كسكس	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 **Couscous**

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Brik	بريك	YouTube Video *Th int ele is no av in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 Brik; CC BY-SA 4.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Recipe	Image
Harira Soup	شوربة حريرة	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online	 **Harira Soup**; CC BY-SA 4.0

10.5.5.2. Traditional Clothes

In each of the Maghreb countries, there are different traditional clothes that come as a result of different cultures and religious backgrounds of the different areas. This is why there is no single traditional clothing that we can call characteristic of the whole country. Traditional clothing is usually used in religious ceremonies, weddings, and/or other occasions, but is rarely, if at all, used in everyday life.

This table presents the most famous traditional clothes of the Maghreb countries:

Country	Clothes
Traditional clothing in Tunisia	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online
Traditional clothing in Algeria	YouTube Video *This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.* View this YouTube Video online

Query 10.5.6.1

Put the name of the country under the correct flag:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.5.6.2

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.5.6.3

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.5.6.4

Put the name of the city in the correct column:

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Query 10.5.6.5

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

Activity

Make a video about an Arab country. The video will include the following: Location, capital, famous cities, historical places, authentic dishes, and new Arabic Cultural phrases that you learned.

This page titled 10.5: Culture is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

INDEX

T

tashkeel

1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل

This page titled Index is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

GLOSSARY

S

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

This page titled Glossary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh (ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative (OERI)).

GLOSSARY

A

Alcohol | الكحول

Algebra | الجبر

April | أَبْريل

Augustus | أغسطس

B

Balcony | بَـلَـكونَة

Balloon | بالون

Bank | بنك

Biscuit | بسكويت

Blogger | بلوغر

Blouse | بلوزة

Bus | باص

C

Chemistry | كيمياء

Cigarette | سيجارة

Cinema | سينما

Computer | كمبيوتر

Cotton | قطن

Cotton | قطن

cup | كوب

D

December | ديسَـمْبَر

Diesel | ديزل

E

Electronic | الكترونية

F

Fahrenheit | فهرنهايت

Falafel | فلافِل

February | فِبْراير

Film | فيلم

G

Gazelle | غزال

Geography | جغرافيا

Gology | جيولوجيا

Google | غوغل

H

Henna | حِنَّة

Hummus | حمص

I

Internet | انترنيت

J

Jacket | جاكيت

January | يَـناير

Jasmine | ياسمين

Jeans | جينز

July | يوليو

June | يونيو

K

Kebab | كباب

Kilo | كيلو

M

Mango | مانجو / مانجا

March | مارس

May | مايو

N

November | نوفَـمبَر

O

October | أوكْتوبِر

P

Pepsi | بيبسي

Petrol | بترول

Physics | فيزياء

Piano | بيانو

Pizza | بيتزا

Plastic | بلاستيك

Potatoes | بطاطا

R

Radio | راديو

Restroom | تواليت

S

Salad | سلطة

Salad | سَلَطَة

Sandwich | ساندويتش

September | سَبْتَمبَر

Shawl | شال

Sofa | صوفا

T

Technology | التكنولوجيا

Television | تلفزيون

Tennis | تنس

Tomatoes | طماطم

Tornado | ترناد

V

Video | فيديو

Y

YouTuber | يوتيوبر

This page titled Cognates Glossary is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.